

THE GREEK & LATIN Fifth Edition ROOTS OF ENGLISH



TAMARA M. GREEN

The GREEK & LATIN
ROOTS *of* ENGLISH

F I F T H E D I T I O N

The GREEK & LATIN
ROOTS *of* ENGLISH

Tamara M. Green

ROWMAN & LITTLEFIELD
Lanham • Boulder • New York • Toronto • London

Published by Rowman & Littlefield

A wholly owned subsidiary of The Rowman & Littlefield Publishing Group, Inc.

4501 Forbes Boulevard, Suite 200, Lanham, Maryland 20706

www.rowman.com

16 Carlisle Street, London W1D 3BT, United Kingdom

Copyright © 2015 by Rowman & Littlefield

First edition 1990. Second edition 1994. Third edition 2003. Fourth edition 2008.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form or by any electronic or mechanical means, including information storage and retrieval systems, without written permission from the publisher, except by a reviewer who may quote passages in a review.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Information Available

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Green, Tamara Marcus, 1944— author.

The Greek & Latin roots of English / Tamara M. Green. — Fifth edition.

pages cm

Includes bibliographical references.


ISBN 978-1-4422-3327-0 (pbk. : alk. paper) — ISBN 978-1-4422-3328-7 (electronic)

1. English language—Foreign elements—Greek. 2. English language—Foreign elements—Latin. 3. Greek language—Influence on English. 4. Latin language—Influence on English. 5. English language—Roots. I. Title. II. Title: Greek and Latin roots of English.

PE1582.G6G74 2014

422'.48—dc23

2014008859

™ The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of American National Standard for Information Sciences—Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials, ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992.

Printed in the United States of America

Contents

Preface xi

1. A Polyglot Stew (Or Food for Thought) 1

I'm So Hungry! 2

What Shall We Have for Dinner? 2

2. Language and History 5

Language Families 6

The Branches of the Indo-European Tree 9

A Brief History of English 10

An Outline of the History of the English Language 16

And What Is More 18

Some Useful Terms 19

Exercises 23

3. How Latin Works 27

Inflected Languages 28

Latin Nouns and Adjectives 29

Finding the Stem of a Latin Noun or Adjective 31

Latin Verbs 31

Conjugations 32

Finding the Stem of a Latin Verb 32

Some Very Useful Latin Verbs 34

Exercises 37

4. Latin into English 43*Forming New Words* 44*I. Adjective-Forming Suffixes Used with Latin Noun Stems* 44*II. Noun-Forming Suffixes Used with Latin Nouns and Adjectives* 45*III. Diminutive-Forming Suffixes with Latin Nouns* 46*IV. Nouns and Adjectives Formed from Latin Verbs* 46*V. Verbal Suffixes* 50*VI. Verbal Learned Borrowings* 51*Exercises* 55**5. How Greek Works 61***The Greek Alphabet* 62*Rules for Transliterating Greek Words into English* 63*Cognates* 65*Exercises* 67**6. Greek into English 71***Greek Suffixes* 72*I. Adjective-Forming Suffixes* 72*II. Noun-Forming Suffixes* 72*III. Learned Borrowings* 74*Exercises* 75**7. Latin and Greek Prefixes 79***I. Latin Prepositions* 80*II. Greek Prepositions* 82*III. Prefixes Derived from Greek and Latin Adjectives and Adverbs* 83*Exercises* 87**8. Latin and Greek Numbers 93***Countdown* 94*Latin Numbers* 94*Greek Numbers* 97*Exercises* 101

9. Government and Politics 105

- Greek Politics* 106
- Roman Politics* 107
- Governmental Bureaucracy* 109
- The Law* 112
- War and Peace* 113
- Exercises* 115

10. Psychology 119

- Modern Theories of Psychology* 120
- Ancient Psychological Theory* 121
- Love and Marriage* 122
- States of Feeling* 123
- The Four Humors* 124
- Star Wars* 125
- Science and the Human Mind* 126
- Exercises* 129

11. The Social Sciences 135

- Theory and Practice* 136
- Anthropology* 136
- Sociology* 137
- Economics* 138
- Exercises* 143

12. Human Biology and Medicine I 147

- Modern Medicine and Ancient Terminology* 148
- The Human Body* 148
- Medical Specialties* 150
- Diagnosis and Treatment* 152
- To Sleep, Perchance to Dream* 154
- Exercises* 159

13. Human Biology and Medicine II 165

- Advanced Medical Training* 166
- The Circulatory System* 166
- The Respiratory System* 166
- The Digestive System* 167
- The Reproductive System* 169
- The Endocrine System* 169
- More Useful Beginnings and Endings* 171
- Exercises* 173

14. Science and Mathematics 177

- Ancient and Modern Science* 178
- The Biological Sciences* 178
- Astronomy* 184
- Chemistry* 186
- Physics* 190
- Geology* 192
- Geography* 194
- Meteorology* 195
- Mathematics* 196
- Islamic Science* 198
- Exercises* 199

15. It's an Academic Question 207

- Greek and Roman Education* 208
- Books and Libraries* 211
- Exercises* 215

16. The Classical Influence 219

- Europe and the Classical Heritage* 220
- The Fine Arts* 220
- City Planning* 222
- Literature* 223
- Theater* 224
- Music* 226
- Athletics, Competition, and Excellence* 227
- Exercises* 231

- 17. Myth, Religion, and Philosophy 235**
 Greek and Roman Religion and Myth 236
 The Greek and Roman Gods 236
 The Calendar 238
 Other Times . . . 239
 Other Places . . . 239
 Troy 244
 Ancient Peoples and Places 246
 Philosophy 248
 The Language of Christianity 250
 Exercises 251
- 18. Lingua Latina Etiam Vivit! (The Latin Language Still Lives!) 255**
 Exercises 261
- Greek Vocabulary 265**
Latin Vocabulary 273
About the Author 283

Preface

“Language is a city to the building of which every human being brought a stone.” Ralph Waldo Emerson’s words are a recognition that the development of language and the ways in which we use it have been, in large measure, historically and culturally determined. But it is also true that not only do individuals and cultures shape language but language shapes us; the way we speak and what we say define us and allow us to articulate our worldview. Ideas take on life only when we can give them expression, and one of the ways by which we do this is through our ability to use language. The more adept we are at this, the greater are our opportunities to explore and create and interpret the variety of our experiences.

Because language is a social product, it is constantly changing, not only structurally, but in the very meaning of words. No language perhaps offers a better opportunity to understand linguistic change than English, especially in the realm of vocabulary. English has absorbed vocabulary from other languages, but as a result of both the accidents of history and the great esteem in which ancient Greek and Roman culture had been held in the European tradition, over 60 percent of all English words have Greek or Latin roots; in the vocabulary of the sciences and technology, the figure rises to over 90 percent. Thus, through the study of the Greek and Latin roots of English, students not only can expand their knowledge of English vocabulary, but also come to understand the ways in which the history of the English language have shaped our perceptions of the world around us.

The approach of this text is thematic: vocabulary is organized into various topics, including politics and government, psychology, medicine and the biological sciences, literature, ancient culture, and religion and philosophy. Unlike those textbooks that treat Latin and Greek roots separately, these lessons present the two vocabularies as an organic whole. Thus, the emphasis is placed on language and the way in which it has developed and changed, rather than on single words, or even groups of words.

The exercises at the end of each chapter are cumulative, reinforcing both vocabulary already learned and analytical skills developed in previous lessons. In addition to teaching vocabulary skills, the text has another, perhaps more subtle, aim. It is hoped that through the study of the Greek and Latin roots of English, students will begin to learn the pleasures (and pitfalls) of language study.

The original development of the materials for this text was made possible by a grant to Hunter College from the National Endowment for the Humanities.

NEW MATERIAL IN THE FIFTH EDITION

The fifth edition has retained the organizational and thematic approach of the earlier editions. New material and exercises have been added to all chapters.

HOW TO USE THIS TEXT

1. In the vocabulary, both the nominative and genitive cases are given for all Latin nouns and adjectives. The principal parts of Latin verbs are also given.
2. An English word followed by Greek in parentheses indicates that the word is Greek in origin.
3. Because most words in English that are derived from Greek are learned borrowings, the genitive case of a noun or adjective is rarely cited, unless the compound form of the word is derived from that case.
4. Vocabulary words are sometimes repeated in different chapters when necessary.
5. Vocabulary words are generally listed in alphabetical order.

Symbols and Abbreviations Used

<i>Symbol or Abbreviation</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
=	English meaning
>	from which is derived
<	derived from
cf.	<i>compare</i>
e.g.	<i>for example</i>

Instructor's Manual

An Instructor's Manual is available to adopters of this text. It contains:

Answers to all the exercises in the text

Quizzes on each chapter

Two final examinations

Answers to all quizzes and final examinations

Supplementary exercises, including answers

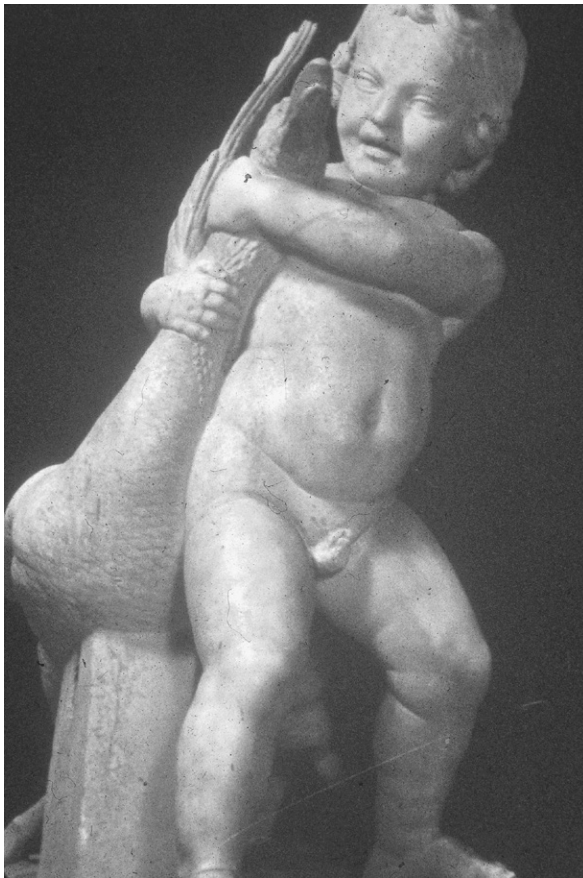
Suggested English derivatives for chapters 3–8

Photographs

All photographs, unless otherwise attributed, are from the author's private collection.

A POLYGLOT STEW

(Or Food for Thought)



Child with a goose (Museo Capitolino, Rome)

*When you cook a crane, make sure that the head does not touch the water, but is outside it.
When it has been cooked, wrap it in a warm cloth and pull its head.*

APICIUS (first-century CE Roman gourmet)

I'M SO HUNGRY!

If, in fact, we are what we eat, the American people are the most cosmopolitan nation in the world. Just as the English language is a mixture of Germanic, Latin, and Greek roots with a heavy seasoning of the Romance languages, with just a dash of Native American, African, and Caribbean, and a sprinkling of Asian vocabulary, so does our diet reflect the various linguistic ingredients that go into the melting pot of American cuisine.

The Normans conquered England in 1066 CE, and introduced, via French, Latin-based names for various foods; nevertheless, although English tastes and vocabulary were about to be expanded, the Germanic contribution to the English *menu* did not disappear. For example, Middle English *mete* made peace with the Old French *boef*, thus allowing both meat and beef on the dinner table, while the Germanic-based *chiken* nested quite comfortably with the French *poulet*. And if the English seemed to have lost their *appetite* after the Norman Conquest, the French tempted their *palates* with the introduction of such foods as *salmon*, *rice*, and *carrots*. French *pain*, however, never replaced Old English *bread*. Perhaps they found that too painful to contemplate.

The Normans may have introduced the English to the finer points of French cookery, but the spread of the British Empire introduced the English language to a host of new tastes from Asia, Africa, and North America. In turn, the extraordinary ethnic diversity of the United States has added its own linguistic flavors to American cuisine.

WHAT SHALL WE HAVE FOR DINNER?

We can eat geographically, as it were, starting off with some Latin-based *wine*, Gaelic *whiskey*, or Russian *vodka*. The German cities of *Hamburg* and *Frankfort* give us two staples of the American diet, whose flavor we can enhance with Chinese *ketchup*, French *mustard*, or a Dutch *pickle*. Or would you prefer Italian *pasta*: *linguini*, perhaps, or *spaghetti*, topped with some *cheese* from *Parma*, Italy? If we want to add a little spice to our lives, we can always order a *curry* at our local Indian *restaurant*, or call the neighborhood *pizzeria*.

Of course, a well-balanced diet needs a French *salad* filled with native and imported *vegetables*: the Native Americans of North and South America can provide *tomatoes*, *potatoes*, *squash*, and *avocados*, while the Arabs will contribute *spinach*. We can add a classical touch with *onions*, *lettuce*, and *peas*; even the lowly *radish* also has a Latin root.

And what is dinner without *dessert*? Some *fruit*, perhaps: an *orange* from Persia, or a *banana* from West Africa, or a much-traveled *apricot*, which passed from Latin into Arabic and then returned into Portuguese before making its way onto the English

menu. If we crave something sweeter, however, what could be more American than *apple pie*? Or would you prefer some Central American *chocolate*, German *cake* or a *pretzel*, or perhaps a Dutch *cookie*? And you can wash it all down with some *coffee* from Turkey, or all the *tea* in China.

Vocabulary

appetite < Latin verb *appeto* = seek, desire

apple < Old English *aeppe*; cf. German *apfel*

apricot < the original form of the word in English, *apricock*, from the Portuguese *albricoque*, which, in turn, came from the Arabic *al birquq*. The Arabic word, however, was a transliteration of a Latin adjective, *praecoquum* (early ripening), a term that could be applied to any fruit.

avocado < Spanish *aguacate* (< Nahuatl *ahuacatl* = testicle)

beef < Old French *boef* (< Latin *bos, bovis* = cow); cf. Modern French *boeuf*

bread < Old English bread; cf. German *brot*, **but** Latin *panis* > French *pain*, Italian *pane*, Spanish *pan*

cake < Middle English *kake*; cf. Icelandic *kaka*, German *kuchen*, Dutch *coek*. Cookie is a diminutive form of *coek*.

carrot < French *carotte* (< Latin *carota* < Greek *karoton*)

cheese < Latin *caseus*

chicken < Germanic *chiken*

chocolate < Nahuatl *chocolatl*

coffee < Turkish *kahve* (< Arabic *qahwah*)

cf. French *café* (coffee shop), and *cafeteria*

cuisine = French *kitchen*; *cooking*

curry < Tamil *kari* (sauce)

dessert < French *desservir* (to clear the table)

fruit < Latin *fruor* = enjoy

lettuce < Latin *lactuca*

meat < Old English *mete*

menu = French *detailed list* (< Latin *minutus* = small)

onion < Latin *unio* (pearl)

palate < Latin *palatum* = roof of the mouth

pasta < Latin *pasta* (dough) (< Greek *pastos* = sprinkled). Originally, pasta was a kind of porridge sprinkled with salt.

pea < Latin *pisum* (cf. Italian *pisello*, French *pois*)

pie < Middle English *pie* (shallow pit) < Old French *puis* < Latin *puleus* (well)

pizza < Italian *pizza* < derivation unclear, but perhaps Latin *placenta* (cake)

potato < Spanish *patata* (< Taino *batata*)

poultry < Middle French *poulet* (< Latin *pullus* = young of any animal); cf. Spanish and Italian *pollo*

pretzel < German *bretzel* (< Latin *bracellus* = bracelet)

radish < Old English *raedic* (< Latin *radix* = root)

restaurant < Latin *restauro* (restore)

rice < Old French *ris* (< Italian *riso* < Greek *oryzon* (rice))

salad < French *salade* < Latin *salata* (salted)

salmon < Latin *salmon*, *salmonis* = salmon

spaghetti < Italian *spago* (cord, rope)

linguini < Latin *lingua* (tongue)

spinach < Old Spanish *espinaca* (< Arabic *isfanakh*)

squash < Narragansett Native American *askutasquash* (“thing eaten green”)

tea < Chinese *t’e* (Amoy dialect); the more common Chinese word is the Mandarin *ch’a*.

tomato < Spanish *tomate* (< Aztec *tomatl*)

vegetable < Latin *vegēo* (grow)

vodka < Russian *voda* (water)

whiskey < Gaelic *usqebaugh* (“the water of life”)

wine < Latin *vinum* (cf. French *vin*, and Italian and Spanish *vino*)

Note: A polyglot is someone who speaks many languages. You will learn the roots of this word very shortly.

LANGUAGE AND HISTORY



Barry Blitt New Yorker cover (© Barry Blitt)

And the whole earth was of one language and of one speech . . . and they said, “Come let us build us a city, and a tower, with its top in heaven, and let us make us a name; lest we be scattered upon the face of the whole earth.” And the Lord came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of men built. And the Lord said, “Behold, they are one people, and they have all one language; and this is what they begin to do; and now nothing will be withholden from them, which they purpose to do. Come let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another’s speech.” So the Lord scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of the earth; and they left off to build the city. Therefore was the name of it called Babel, because the Lord did there confound the language of all the earth.

GENESIS 11:1–9 (King James Version)

LANGUAGE FAMILIES

Language is a human activity, and like all human activities, it seems to have infinite variability. It is estimated that there are between 2,900 and nearly 10,000 living languages in the world.¹ Nevertheless, despite that variability, it is possible to distinguish the patterns and relationships of these languages to one another. As a result, they have been classified into families, the members of which are considered by linguists to be related because of similarities in structure, grammar, phonology, and vocabulary.

Yet, like every other kind of human activity, language is subject to change; and many languages have disappeared or evolved into other languages over the centuries. For example, Latin is no longer spoken, but it survives through its direct descendants, Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, and Romanian. Other ancient languages survive only in written form, and still others have disappeared without a trace because they were not written down, and their speakers were absorbed into other populations.

What Were They Saying?

What was the first language? Philosophers and linguists, kings and theologians have debated this question for several thousand years. Early Christian scholars maintained that the language spoken in the Garden of Eden was Hebrew, while an eighteenth-century Swedish clergyman jokingly suggested that in the Garden, God spoke Swedish, Adam spoke Danish, and the serpent who tempted Eve spoke French.

The major families, or trees, of human languages have many branches.

Sino-Tibetan

Most languages spoken in China belong to the Sinitic branch of this family. There are more than a billion speakers of the eight varieties of Chinese that are regarded by some linguists as separate languages, united only by a common writing system.

More than 300 languages in the Tibeto-Burman branch are spoken in parts of Burma, Tibet, Thailand, Vietnam, and Laos.

1. Estimates of the number of languages vary because of the question of what constitutes a distinct language (as opposed to dialect) and because many languages exist only in spoken form. According to the *Cambridge Encyclopedia of Languages*, over 22,000 names of languages, living and dead, have been recorded. According to the *Cambridge Encyclopedia*, there are, however, only 10 languages that have over 100 million speakers: Chinese (over one billion); English (750 million, including those countries that count English as an official language); Hindi (490 million); Spanish (420 million); Russian (255 million); Arabic (230 million); Bengali (215 million); Portuguese (213 million); German (129 million); and Japanese (127 million). These figures do not include non-native speakers of these languages and are all, of course, approximate.

Afro-Asiatic (Hamito-Semitic)

The Afro-Asiatic family includes over 250 languages that are spoken in North Africa and southwest Asia. The Semitic languages, which include Arabic and Hebrew, as well as many of the languages of the ancient Near East, constitute the largest branch of this family.

Among other languages belonging to this family are nearly 175 that are spoken in North Africa, including Amharic (the official language of Ethiopia) and Hausa, the primary language of more than 25 million people in West Africa.

Austro-Asiatic

There are three branches and over 100 languages that belong to the Austro-Asiatic family spread across southeast Asia. The largest of these branches is Mon-Khmer, which includes the languages of Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, and parts of Burma and Malaysia.

Dravidian

The Dravidian family is composed of more than seventy languages spoken primarily in southern and eastern India, although speakers are found as far away as southern and eastern regions of Africa. Although the vast majority of the population of India speaks languages that belong to the Indo-European family, the Dravidian languages are spoken by more than 230 million people. Tamil is the most diffuse, with 50 million speakers in India, Pakistan, Malaysia, and Indonesia, as well as other areas of the Indian and South Pacific Oceans.

Niger-Congo

It is estimated that there are between 1,000 and 3,000 languages spoken in Africa by over 400 million people,² but fewer than 5 percent have more than a million speakers. The largest African language family is the Niger-Congo group, which encompasses about a thousand languages, and several thousand dialects. Within this family are the approximately 700 languages belonging to the Benue-Congo branch, which includes more than 500 Bantu languages, among them Swahili, Rwanda, Khongo, Xhosa, and Zulu. Since there is such an extraordinary diversity of African languages, Swahili or Arabic is often used as a *lingua franca*.³

2. The difficulty in calculating the number of languages spoken in Africa is due to the fact that many either are isolated geographically or have no writing systems to record them.

3. A *lingua franca* is any language that is used as a means of communication among speakers of different languages that are mutually incomprehensible.

Uralic

The two branches of the Uralic family are the Finno-Ugric languages, spoken in central and northern Europe (including Finnish, Estonian, Hungarian, and Lapp), and the much smaller group of Samoyedic languages that are spoken by perhaps 30,000 people scattered across Siberia and the Arctic.

Altaic

The geographical distribution of the Altaic languages ranges from the Balkan Peninsula to Central Asia, and includes over forty languages that are divided into three groups: Turkic, Mongolian, and Manchu.

The largest group, Turkic, includes Turkish, Uighur (whose speakers are found mainly in China), and the languages of Azerbaijan, Uzbekistan, and Turkmenistan.

Although Korean and Japanese share some similarities with other members of this family, the connections have not been determined precisely.

Caucasian

The region of the Caucasus Mountains, between the Caspian and Black Seas, contains the highest concentration of languages in the world; although smaller in area than Great Britain, more than twenty different languages are spoken there, but only Georgian has more than a million speakers.

Because this region formed part of the former Soviet Union, the vocabulary of these languages has been heavily influenced by Russian.

North and South American Languages

At the time of the arrival of Europeans, there were perhaps 300 languages spoken by the indigenous inhabitants of North America. More than half of these have disappeared, with fewer than 300,000 speakers of these languages still remaining.

In South and Central America, there are approximately 11 million speakers of Amerindian languages. Among these is Quechua (the official language of the Incas and spoken by more than 6 million people). There once may have been as many as 2,000 languages spoken in South America.

Who Are You?

There are also some languages that are called “orphans” or “isolates,” single languages that seem to bear no relationship with any other, such as Ainu, a now nearly extinct language spoken in areas of Japan but unrelated to Japanese, or Basque, the language of the inhabitants of the Pyrenees region of Spain and France.

THE BRANCHES OF THE INDO-EUROPEAN TREE

The largest and most widely diffused of these language families is Indo-European, with over 2 billion speakers around the world. Of course the origins of all language families are difficult to pin down with any certainty, but historical and comparative linguists have constructed a model that would explain most fully the development of the Indo-European tree and the growth of its various branches. They posit a common ancestor of these languages that they label as Proto-Indo-European (PIE), a language thought to be spoken by a people living in what is now southwestern Russia and Kazakhstan about 6,000 years ago. As this population spread out in all directions, PIE evolved into dialects and then into mutually incomprehensible languages, but their common source could be established through similarities in grammatical structure and vocabulary. Here's an example:

<i>English</i> brother	<i>Sanskrit</i> bhrata	<i>Persian</i> buradar	<i>Russian</i> brat	<i>Greek</i> phrater	<i>Latin</i> frater
---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	------------------------	-------------------------	------------------------

Linguists have classified the surviving branches of the Indo-European family as follows:

Indic

Hindi	Bengali	Gujarati	Marathi	Oriya
Punjabi	Romany	Sinhalese	Urdu	Sanskrit ⁴

Iranian

Baluchi	Kurdish	Pashto	Farsi (Persian)	Avestan ⁴
---------	---------	--------	-----------------	----------------------

Italic

Latin ⁴ >				
Italian	French	Spanish	Portuguese	Romanian

Hellenic

Ancient Greek ⁴ >	Medieval Greek ⁴ >	Modern Greek		
------------------------------	-------------------------------	--------------	--	--

Germanic

German	Dutch	Afrikaans	Flemish	Yiddish
Danish	Icelandic	Norwegian	Swedish	
Anglo-Saxon (Old English) ⁴ >		Middle English ⁴ >	Modern English	

4. An asterisk indicates that the language is no longer spoken although it may survive in written form. The sacred writings of many religions around the world sometimes preserve languages that are no longer spoken. For example, the *Vedas*, sacred texts of the Hindu religion, are preserved in Sanskrit.

Balto-Slavonic

Russian	Belorussian	Latvian	Lithuanian	Czech
Polish	Slovak	Slovene		

Celtic

Breton	Gaelic	Irish	Scots	Welsh
Manx★	Cornish★			

Survivors, or Against All Odds

Some branches of the Indo-European tree have withered and disappeared; others, such as Armenian and Albanian, survive as a single offshoot.

Yes, languages die too, like individuals. They may decompose into fine dust or a heap of bones from which it is difficult to reconstruct the image of the living organism that was once there. They may be embalmed and preserved for posterity, changeless and static, lifelike in appearance but unendowed with the breath of life. While they live, however, they change.

—MARIO PEI, *The Story of Language*

A BRIEF HISTORY OF ENGLISH

Although English is classified as belonging to the Germanic branch of the Indo-European tree because of its structure, grammar, and basic vocabulary, it has been strongly influenced, through the accidents of history and politics, by other Indo-European languages, most notably Latin and its offshoots, the Romance languages, and, to a lesser extent, Greek.

Latin and the Power of Rome

At the height of its power in the second century CE, the Roman Empire extended from the Euphrates River in the East to Britain in the West. Everywhere in Europe and North Africa that the Romans went, they brought with them not only soldiers and government officials, but also their language; and therefore, in order to do business with the ruling powers, one had to learn at least a little Latin. Over several centuries, the Latin spoken in the provinces often became mixed with the local languages, out of which evolved the foundations of at least some of the languages spoken in Europe today.

By the fifth century CE, the Roman Empire had begun to disintegrate, as a series of invaders, mostly Germanic, began to carve out sections of the empire as their own. In 410 CE, the Roman army withdrew from Britain, leaving the island to its Celtic inhabitants and those Latin-speaking missionaries who had come to convert them to Christianity. But less than forty years later, beginning in 449 CE, southern Britain

was overrun by the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes, all Germanic tribes from the mainland of Europe.

Anglo-Saxon Culture and Old English

The culture and language of these Germanic peoples are called Anglo-Saxon; and within a relatively short period of time, they had become the dominant political and linguistic power in Britain, as the Celts fled west into Ireland and Wales. Although Latin had all but disappeared as a spoken language, its influence could be seen in place names: *-chester*, as in Dorchester, and *-caster*, as in Lancaster, which derive from the Latin *castra*, a military camp. And when the Anglo-Saxons were converted to Christianity in 597 CE, Latin was reintroduced, as the language of the Church.

The greatest work of Anglo-Saxon, or Old English, literature is the epic poem *Beowulf*, whose opening lines show how much English has changed in 1,500 years:

*Hwæt, we gardena in geardagum
 beodcýninga þrym gefrunon
 hu ða æþelingas ellen fremedon!*⁵

The Norman Conquest and Middle English

The language spoken in England would have remained basically Germanic in its vocabulary, grammar, and structure, had it not been for an accident of politics and genealogy. In 1066 CE, Edward, king of England, died without an heir; and the Anglo-Saxon nobles elected Harold, who was not related to Edward, as their king. But perhaps out of family loyalty, perhaps out of a desire for more power, William, ruler of Normandy, whose wife was related to Edward, challenged Harold's right to the throne. William and his army invaded Britain, and at the battle of Hastings, Harold was defeated and killed. On Christmas Day, 1066 CE, William, now called the Conqueror, was crowned King of England and Normandy.

William brought with him a new ruling class, made up of French-speaking Normans,⁶ who imposed their politics, customs, and language on the Anglo-Saxons. And just as those who had wanted to do business with the Romans had had to learn Latin, so

5. "Behold! We of the spear Danes from old times
 Of the people kings' glory have heard
 How the princes deeds of valor performed."

6. Who were the Normans? Actually, in their origins they were also Germanic, having come from Scandinavia (which is why they were called Northmen, or Normans) in the ninth century to settle in France. But they had so thoroughly adapted to the language and customs of the people that within a very short period of time they had abandoned their original language for French and given their name to that region of northwest France.

those who wanted to be accepted by the Norman power structure had to learn French. For nearly 150 years, French was the language of government, law, and religion. In the thirteenth century, however, as relations deteriorated between England and France, the use of English increasingly became an expression of nationalism; and English began once more to reassert itself. Nevertheless, in part because of the influence of French, in part because all languages change over time, it was radically different from the Anglo-Saxon of *Beowulf*. Thousands of new vocabulary words had been added to English either from French, a Latin-based language, or directly from Latin, with the result that today English contains twice as many words derived from French and Latin as from German. This newly evolved form is called Middle English, and although it is difficult for a speaker of modern English to read easily, it contains many recognizable forms and words, as the opening lines of Geoffrey Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* demonstrates:

*Whan that Aprill with his shoures soote
The droghte of March hath perced to the roote,
And bathed every veyne in swich licour
Of which vertu engendred is the flour.*⁷

Modern English

Like Old and Middle English, Modern English has been shaped by a number of historical, political, and social events: the European Renaissance and the rebirth of interest in ancient Greek and Roman literature and culture, the development of modern science and technology, British colonialism, and the founding of the United States. But perhaps the greatest single influence on the formation of Modern English was the printing press, whose invention is generally credited to the German Johannes Gutenberg (d. 1468), and which was introduced into England by William Caxton in 1476. This invention led not only to the standardization of spelling,⁸ usage, and pronunciation, but was instrumental in the growth of literacy, and in the increase in the number of schools. It is not surprising, then, that speech became an indication of social class.

Although Latin and Greek continued to be held in high esteem because of the renewed interest in the heritage of the classical tradition, the Renaissance and the

7. "When April with its sweet showers
The drought of March has pierced to the root,
and bathed every vein in such moisture
by whose quickening force is engendered the flower."

8. The attempt to standardize English spelling had unintended consequences, for although the spelling of a word might become fixed, its pronunciation changed over time. As a result, many words now contain letters that are no longer pronounced, e.g., *thought* or *weigh*. On the other hand, the letter *b* was added to the spelling of the word *debt* because it was derived from the Latin verb *debeo* (owe).

rise of the modern nation-state saw the growth of vernacular⁹ literatures throughout Europe. Increasingly, it was maintained by many that the English language could be employed as effectively as Latin or Greek to express serious thought. After all, as a sixteenth-century English scholar pointed out, the ancient Greeks wrote in Greek, the Romans composed in Latin, and thus it was only natural that the English should employ their own native tongue. At the same time, however, there was the recognition on the part of at least some writers and scholars of a need for a greatly enriched English vocabulary. The coinage of new vocabulary by authors in this period added more than 10,000 new words to the language; ironically, the vast majority derived from Latin and Greek roots. Not all of these newly minted words, however, entered into popular usage, and some did not survive.

Not all of the new words were adapted from Latin or Greek. The argument among sixteenth-century scholars about the “purity” of English vocabulary grew more heated as diplomacy and trade broadened the possibility of linguistic interchange. Although as a matter of national pride vehement objections were raised about the introduction of Italian, French, and Spanish words into English vocabulary, many words, such as *vogue*, *essay*, *bizarre*, *piazza*, *mustache*, *gazette*, and *bravado*, found a permanent place.

In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, the development of modern science, which also added thousands of new vocabulary words to English, was grounded, at least in part, in the view that all activity, including language, could be explained logically and rationally. The focus on standardization of language and usage also produced an increased interest in etymology, or the history of individual words, as a way of determining the precise meaning of words and their correct usage. In 1755, Dr. Samuel Johnson (1709–1784) published *A Dictionary of the English Language*, which contained 40,000 words and their definitions, pronunciations, and varied usages. Its intent, he said, was “to reserve the purity and ascertain the meaning of our English idiom.” Dr. Johnson’s *Dictionary* was a landmark in the history of English lexicography, and marked the first methodical attempt to establish a standard English vocabulary. During the eighteenth century, there was also the attempt to regularize English grammar and syntax. Although the scientist Joseph Priestley argued that “the custom of speaking is the original and only just standard for any language,” most grammarians subscribed to Dr. Johnson’s insistence that “every language must be formed after the model of one of the ancient.” And as a result, they transposed the rules of Latin grammar onto English, despite the fact that at least a few scholars recognized that Latin grammar was not particularly well suited as a model for English.

With the growth of the British Empire, beginning in the seventeenth century, politics once again played a role in the history of the English language. Not only did

9. *Vernacular* is the language that is native to a country, but it is also a term to describe ordinary, or everyday, language as opposed to literary language and expression.

the native languages of North America, Africa, and Asia contribute large numbers of words to English (such as *moccasin*, *jungle*, *hurricane*, and *tobacco*), but also colonialism led to the spread of the use of English around the world. By the mid-nineteenth century, the recognition that both the addition of “new” words to English vocabulary and the intricate history of the English language demanded a new kind of dictionary gave impetus to the monumental project that is known as the *Oxford English Dictionary*.¹⁰ Begun in 1879, under the editorship of James Murray, the *Oxford English Dictionary* (*OED*) was not completed until 1928. Consisting of twelve volumes, it not only gave the various definitions and usages, but detailed the history of each of the over 400,000 entries. Successive teams of lexicographers have produced several supplements, and the *OED* now extends to twenty volumes and contains over 500,000 items.

The differences between a dialect and a language are a matter of great debate among linguists, since there is no accepted criterion for making any distinction between the two. The simplest definition is that it is a variety of a language that is characteristic of a particular group of the language’s speakers. But who gets to determine what is “standard” and what is a “variety” is often a matter of politics, history, and social structure. As an old joke goes, “a language is a dialect with an army and a navy.”

American English

England and America are two countries separated by the same language.

GEORGE BERNARD SHAW (early twentieth-century playwright and critic)

Like the general history of English, the history of American English can be divided into periods. The earliest, and most influential, began with the first permanent English-speaking settlement at Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607 and ended with the establishment of the United States as an independent country after the American Revolution. During this period, the majority of European settlers were from Britain, and they brought with them the speech patterns, vocabulary, and grammar of seventeenth- and eighteenth-century England.

The American Revolution was grounded in the struggle for political independence, and at least for some, that meant linguistic independence as well. In 1774, an American patriot declared, “The English language has been greatly improved in Britain within a century, but its highest perfection, with every other branch of human knowledge, is perhaps reserved for this land of light and freedom.” Perhaps the most noteworthy

10. The members of the Philological Society of Great Britain, to whom the idea of the *OED* must be credited, argued that existing dictionaries were “incomplete and deficient.”

individual in the formation of American English is Noah Webster (1758–1843), who compiled three books: a speller, a grammar, and a reader. The speller was an extraordinary success, and over the next century it would sell more than 80 million copies. His most lasting and influential work, however, was *An American Dictionary of the English Language*, which he wrote as a contribution “into the common treasure of patriotic exertions.” Webster believed that a national language was an instrument of unity:

It is not only important, but, in a degree necessary, that the people of this country should have an American Dictionary of the English language; for, although the body of the language is the same as in England, and it is desirable to perpetuate that sameness, yet some differences must exist. Language is an expression of ideas; and if the people of our country cannot preserve an identity of ideas, they cannot retain an identity of language. (Preface to *An American Dictionary*, 1828)



Hand from a monumental statue of the Roman Emperor Constantine (313–337 CE) (Museo Capitolino, Rome)

American English is, of course, the product of both normal linguistic change and the “melting pot” of American society. Each wave of immigration to the United States—from Northern, Southern, and Eastern Europe, from Asia, from Africa, and from South America—has made its own contributions to the development of a distinctly American English, not only in terms of vocabulary but also in patterns of speech and usage. Yet, despite some regional variations, what marks American English is its uniformity. In the last century, the advent of radio, the movies, and television accelerated the process of homogenization of American speech and vocabulary.

According to the 2011 U.S. census, over 60 million Americans speak a language other than English at home. The largest numbers belong to the Indo-European family, but among the top ten are Chinese, Korean, Vietnamese, and Tagalog.

How Do You Spell That?

Noah Webster’s eagerness to create an “American” English led to the Americanization of the orthography of many English words that had entered the language through French. Thus, *honour* became *honor*, and *centre* became *center*. Of course, spelling reform can also create confusion. Although Benjamin Franklin urged that the silent letters in words be eliminated, that would mean that we work hard to put *bred* on the table. And what about the pronunciation of *through*, *although*, *tough*, and *thought*?

There are some words, of course, that might benefit from a firm editorial hand. Although we have all been taught that the longest non-technical word in English is *antidisestablishmentarianism* (twenty-eight letters), the prize actually goes to *floccinaucinihilipilification* (twenty-nine letters), a word said to have been coined as a joke by some British schoolboys but now listed in the OED. It is composed of a number of Latin words, all of which mean “of little or no value.” Its meaning is “the action or habit of estimating something as worthless.”

AN OUTLINE OF THE HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

The Roman Occupation of Britain: First century CE–410 CE

1. The earlier presence of Celtic languages (which also belong to the Indo-European family)
2. Introduction of Latin, the language of conquest and commerce
3. Withdrawal of the Roman army (410 CE)

The Anglo-Saxons and Old English: 450–1150 CE

1. Invasion of the Germanic tribes (449)
2. Conversion of the Anglo-Saxons to Christianity (597)
3. *Beowulf*: eighth to ninth centuries (?)
4. Viking raids on Britain: eighth to ninth centuries
5. The Norman Conquest (1066)

Middle English: 1150–1500 CE

1. The Anglo-French connection: loss of many Old English words; addition of thousands of Latin-based words via French; changes in grammar and structure
2. Development of a vernacular literature
Geoffrey Chaucer (d. 1400): *Canterbury Tales*
William Langland (d. 1400): *Piers Plowman*
3. First translation of Bible into English, attributed to John Wycliff (d. 1384)
4. Introduction of the printing press into England by William Caxton (1476)

Modern English: 1500 CE–present

1. Decline of Latin as common European language of discourse
2. Translations of classical Latin and Greek texts into the vernacular
3. William Shakespeare (1564–1616)
4. Standardization of spelling (*orthography*) and enrichment of English vocabulary (sixteenth to seventeenth centuries)
5. Dr. Samuel Johnson: *A Dictionary of the English Language* (1755)
6. The development of the scientific study of comparative, historical, and structural linguistics (eighteenth century)
7. The influence of British colonialism and the impact of Empire (nineteenth and twentieth centuries)
8. James Murray and the *Oxford English Dictionary* (1879–1928)

*American English**From Jamestown to the end of the colonial period: 1607–1790*

The establishment of the forms and patterns of American English, as distinct from British English.

Westward expansion: 1790–1860

1. Immigration from Western Europe and Ireland
2. Noah Webster: *An American Dictionary of the English Language* (1828)
3. Settlement of the far west

Since the American Civil War: 1865–present

1. Emancipation Proclamation (1863): influence of “Black” English
2. Immigration from Eastern and Southern Europe (1880–1920)
3. Immigration from Caribbean and South America (1945–present)
4. Immigration from Asia and the Pacific Rim (1975–present)
5. Uniformity of language vs. regionalism; the influence of radio, television, and movies

Creole

A Creole is a language that has been formed by the mixing of two or more “parent” languages and that has become the first language of a community. Creoles are often the result of trade or colonialism and slavery, developed out of the need for a common means of communication between different groups. Gullah, a combination of English and West African languages that is now spoken by perhaps 100,000 people who live in the islands off the coasts of South Carolina and Georgia, was shaped by Africans brought to America as slaves. Although its vocabulary is for the most part grounded in English, its grammar, sentence structure, and pronunciation have been influenced by the original African languages.

AND WHAT IS MORE

Although the strongest influences on the Germanic core vocabulary of English have been Latin and the Romance languages, most of these words have become “Anglicized,” or made to conform to specific English forms and patterns. Some, however, have retained the tones and inflections of their original home, and English contains a host of words and phrases from the Romance languages that have entered English unchanged in form and meaning. But words from many other languages have also found a new home in English. Here’s a brief selection: there will be more in following chapters.

from the Romance languages

aficionado (Sp): literally, affectionate; an ardent fan

avant-garde (Fr): literally, guard before; experimentalists in any art in a particular period

carte blanche (Fr): literally, a blank document; unconditional authority

coup (Fr): literally, a blow; a clever action or accomplishment

desperado (Sp): outlaw

fiasco (It): literally, a bottle; a total failure

prima donna (It): literally, first lady; a temperamental individual

from further afield

bazaar (Persian *bazar*): market

candy (Arabic *qandi*): literally, a piece of sugar

guru (Hindi): literally, a teacher or priest. An influential teacher or mentor

pajama (Hindi): literally, a loose garment

tycoon (Japanese): literally, great prince; a businessperson having great wealth and power

Of course, the etymological road leads in two directions. Take, for example, the French “le weekend” or “le drugstore.”

SOME USEFUL TERMS

Etymology: the study of the history of a particular word; the derivation or origin of a word

Lexicography: the compiling of dictionaries; Dr. Johnson labeled lexicographers as “harmless drudges”

Lexicon: a dictionary

Linguistics: the science of language, including the history, formation, and structures of languages

Orthography: correct spelling

Philology: the study of written records; linguistics

Phonology: the science of speech sounds, speech elements, and pronunciation

Semantics: the study of linguistic meaning and form

Syntax: the rules or patterns of the formation of sentences

Let Me Count the Words

How many words are there in English? As the *Oxford English Dictionary* points out, there is no single sensible answer to this question, but it adds that there are 170,476 entries of words in current use; if distinct meanings were counted, the number would rise to nearly 750,000.

On the other hand, most lists of basic English vocabulary contain 800–1,000 words. That doesn't mean, of course, that one's vocabulary is limited to that number of words; there are 25,000 words in the *Oxford Pocket Dictionary*, but it is claimed that 90 percent of the concepts that these words define can be expressed with a vocabulary of 850 words.

Let Me Count the Words (Again) . . .

According to scholars, William Shakespeare's works contain 31,534 vocabulary words (yes, someone has counted them). And yet, perhaps as an illustration of the decline of the classical languages as an indication of learning, the playwright Ben Jonson, his contemporary, describes him with these words: "Though thou hadst small Latin and less Greek."

We Speak the Same Language, Don't We?

If in London you follow the sign marked subway, you will find yourself in an underground passage that allows you to cross a heavily traveled street. The London Underground is the New York City subway. Got that?

But What Does It Mean?

“When I use a word,” Humpty Dumpty said, in a rather scornful tone, “it means just what I choose it to mean—neither more nor less.”—Lewis Carroll, *Through the Looking Glass*

Words, Words, and More Words

It is said that because of the various linguistic strands that form English vocabulary, English contains more synonyms than any other language. Some Latin-based synonyms are simply more elegant forms of Germanic-based vocabulary. For example,

<i>Germanic-Based Word</i>	<i>Latin-Based Word</i>
beg	supplicate
behead	decapitate
drink	imbibe
bitterness	asperity
greedy	rapacious
harmful	deleterious
hate	abhor
house	domicile
slander	calumniate
tiredness	lassitude

Studying Language Can Be Glamorous

The words *grammar* and *glamour* have the same etymology. *Grammar*, a system that describes the structures of a particular language, is derived from the Greek word *gramma* (something written). In medieval Europe, few people could read, and those who could were thought to possess special magical power. The original meaning of *glamour*, which is a variant pronunciation of *grammar*, was magic or enchantment.



2 : EXERCISES

NAME _____

1. Approximately how many languages are there estimated to be spoken in the world?

2. List three ways by which language families are distinguished:
(a) _____, (b) _____, (c) _____
3. Name four language families other than Indo-European:
(a) _____, (b) _____, (c) _____, (d) _____
4. Where are the Dravidian languages spoken? _____ Mon-Khmer? _____
5. How many varieties of Chinese are there? _____ What common factor unites them?

6. To what language family does Quechua belong? _____ Where is it spoken?

7. How many, approximately, languages are spoken in Africa? _____
8. To what branch of the Indo-European family does English belong? _____
9. To which branch of the Indo-European family does Latin belong? _____
10. To which branch of the Indo-European family does Greek belong? _____
11. What percentage of English vocabulary is derived from Latin and Greek? _____ What percentage of scientific and technical vocabulary? _____
12. List five Germanic languages that are still spoken today.
(1) _____ (2) _____ (3) _____ (4) _____ (5) _____
13. To which language family does Anglo-Saxon belong? _____ To which branch?
_____ Where and when was it spoken? _____
14. Name one work written in Old English. _____
15. Anglo-Saxon is a synonym for which language? _____

16. What event introduced a Latin-based vocabulary into English? _____ When did it occur? _____ Through which language did most of these words first pass? _____
17. Who wrote *Canterbury Tales*? _____ To which period of English does it belong? _____
18. Who is generally credited with the introduction of the printing press into England? _____ When? _____
19. What effect did the introduction of the printing press have on the development of the English language? _____
20. Who compiled *A Dictionary of the English Language*? _____ When? _____
21. Eighteenth-century grammarians tended to look at which language when establishing the rules of English usage? _____.
22. Give one cause of the introduction of many non-Indo-European words into English. _____
23. Who was the first editor of the *Oxford English Dictionary*? _____ How long did it take to complete? _____
24. What was the first permanent English-speaking settlement in America? _____ When was it founded? _____
25. From which region of Europe did the earliest immigrants to the United States come? _____
26. During the period 1880–1920, from which area did most of the immigrants come? _____ During the period since 1945? _____
27. What were Noah Webster's contributions to American English? _____
28. What is etymology? _____
29. What is linguistics? _____
30. What is orthography? _____
31. If someone says, "It's only a matter of semantics," what does she mean? _____

32. What is the largest language family? _____ How many people world-wide speak a language that belongs to that family? _____
33. Which language has the largest number of speakers? _____ Why? _____
34. How many people worldwide speak English as their first language? _____
35. What does the term *vernacular* mean? _____
36. What has been the effect of television and the movies on American English?

37. What is lexicography? _____
38. Why is French called a Romance language? _____
39. What is an “orphan” language? _____ Give one example. _____
40. What is a lingua franca? _____ Give an example. _____
41. Sanskrit is no longer spoken, but how is it preserved? _____
42. From which language does the word *tycoon* come? _____ What is its literal meaning in that language? _____ What is its English usage? _____
43. From which language does the word *fiasco* come? _____ What is its literal meaning in that language? _____ What is its English usage? _____
44. From what language does the phrase *carte blanche* come? _____ What is its meaning in that language? _____ What is its English usage? _____

What are the Germanic-based synonyms for the following Latin-based words? Use your dictionary if you are not sure of the meaning of the Latin-based word.

45. acrimonious _____
46. juvenile _____
47. mordant _____
48. bibulous _____
49. execrate _____
50. What is the biggest source of new vocabulary today? _____

The following words have entered English unchanged (but sometimes with slight changes in spelling) from other languages. Use your dictionary to find the language of origin and meaning:

	<i>Language of Origin</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
51. angst	_____	_____
52. nadir	_____	_____
53. khaki	_____	_____
54. sputnik	_____	_____
55. pariah	_____	_____
56. robot	_____	_____
57. caravan	_____	_____
58. taboo	_____	_____
59. mummy	_____	_____
60. bungalow	_____	_____
61. guru	_____	_____

HOW LATIN WORKS



Roman Forum

*Latin is a dead language,
As you can plainly see.
It killed off all the Romans,
And now it's killing me.*

Popular rhyme among students of Latin

INFLECTED LANGUAGES

Before we can begin to study the Greek and Latin roots of English vocabulary, we must first understand something of the way in which these languages “work.” In modern English, the function of any word in a sentence or a phrase is determined by its position. For example:

The dog bites the man.
has a very different meaning from
The man bites the dog.

whereas

The the man dog bites and
Bites man the dog the
have no meaning at all.

Both Latin and Greek, however, are inflected languages. That means that the functions of words within a particular sentence are determined not by word order, as in English, but by various endings that are placed on each word.

In Latin, *canis* = dog
 vir = man
 mordeo = I bite

If we want to say “*The dog bites the man*,” we can write:

Canis virum mordet, or
Canis mordet virum, or
Mordet virum canis, or
Virum canis mordet.

No matter how we arrange the words, the meaning of the sentence is always the same, because the ending (inflection) of each word determines its function in the sentence. If we want to change the meaning of the sentence, we have to change the endings of the words.

If we want to say, “*The man bites the dog*,” we can write:

Canem vir mordet, or
Canem mordet vir, or
Mordet vir canem, etc.

What has changed in these different Latin sentences? Can you explain why these changes have occurred?

Inflection

All Indo-European languages (including English) were originally highly inflected, although English has lost most of the distinctive endings. We can see the persistence of inflection in English, however, in such changes in form as *I, my, me; he, his, him; goose, geese; sing, sang, sung; teach, teaches, taught*. What grammatical change does each of these different forms indicate?

LATIN NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The changes in the endings of nouns and adjectives are determined by *declension*. Each change of form that occurs is called a *case*. There are six cases in Latin, each one expressing a possible function of a noun, pronoun, or adjective in a sentence, as in the example of *femina* (woman):

femina = woman

<i>Case</i>	<i>Sing. Form</i>	<i>Function</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Plural Form</i>
Nominative	<i>femina</i>	subject	The woman carries a book. ¹	<i>feminae</i>
Genitive	<i>feminae</i>	possessive	I carry the woman's book.	<i>feminarum</i>
Dative	<i>feminae</i>	ind. object	I give a book to the woman.	<i>feminis</i>
Accusative	<i>feminam</i>	direct object	I see the woman.	<i>feminas</i>
Ablative	<i>feminā</i>	means/agent	It was done by the woman.	<i>feminis</i>
Vocative	<i>femina</i>	direct address	Woman, look at this!	<i>feminae</i>

There are five declensions (that is, five different sets of endings) in Latin; every noun and adjective belongs to one of these five declensions. Each declension is identified by the ending found in the genitive (possessive) case.

1. There is no indefinite (*a, an*) or definite (*the*) article in Latin.

1. The first declension is identified by *-ae* in the genitive case:
femina, *feminae* = woman, of the woman
porta, *portae* = door, of the door
nauta, *nautae* = sailor, of the sailor
2. The second declension is identified by *-i* in the genitive case:
vir, *viri* = man, of the man
amicus, *amici* = friend, of the friend
bellum, *belli* = war, of the war
3. The third declension is identified by *-is* in the genitive case:
rex, *regis* = king
mens, *mentis* = mind
urbs, *urbis* = city
4. The fourth declension is identified by *-ūs* in the genitive case:
manus, *manūs* = hand, of the hand
cornu, *cornūs* = horn, of the horn



Marcus Aurelius, last of the “good” Roman emperors (161–180 CE). While on campaign, he composed a work of philosophy, *The Meditations*, that was grounded in Stoic teachings. (Vatican Museum)

5. The fifth declension is identified by *-ei* in the genitive case:

fides, fidei = faith, of the faith

dies, diei = day, of the day

There are very few nouns and no adjectives that belong to the fourth and fifth declensions.

FINDING THE STEM OF A LATIN NOUN OR ADJECTIVE

The reason why it is so important to understand how declensions work is that almost all English derivatives from Latin nouns and adjectives are formed from the stem of the word. The stem of a noun or adjective is the genitive case minus the case ending.

<i>Genitive Case</i>	<i>Stem</i>
feminae	femin-
nautae	naut-
portae	port-
viri	vir-
belli	bell-
regis	reg-
mentis	ment-
urbis	urb-
manus, manūs	man-
fidei	fid-

LATIN VERBS

Just as nouns and adjectives are inflected, so are verbs. The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*. The changes in verb endings indicate person (first, second, or third person), tense (time of action), voice (active or passive²), and mood (indicative, subjunctive, or imperative³).

Almost every Latin verb has four stems (called principal parts), each of which has a different function, and from which are formed all the possible tenses, and voices. For example,

2. The use of the active voice indicates that the subject of the sentence is doing the action (the wolf ate the boy). The passive voice indicates that the subject of the sentence is receiving the action (the boy was eaten by the wolf).

3. Mood is the way of expressing the action of a verb as a fact (indicative), as a command (imperative), or as a possibility that may or may not occur (subjunctive). The subjunctive in both Latin and Greek has many uses.

amo-amare-amavi-amatum = love

amo = I love (first person singular, present tense, active voice)

amamus = we love (first person plural, present tense, active voice)

amavi = I have loved (first person singular, perfect tense, active voice)

amabitur = She (or he or it) will be loved (third person singular, future tense, passive voice)

amata eras = you (fem.) had been loved (second person singular, pluperfect tense, passive voice)

amatē = love! (imperative)

amare = to love (infinitive)

CONJUGATIONS

There are four conjugations, each of which is distinguished by the vowel that appears in the infinitive form:

1. The first conjugation is distinguished by *a* in the infinitive form:
amo-amare-amavi-amatum = love
porto-portare-portavi-portatum = carry
2. The second conjugation is distinguished by *ē* (long) in the infinitive form:
moneo-monēre-monui-monitum = warn
teneo-tenēre-tenui-tentum = hold
3. The third conjugation is distinguished by *ē* (short) in the infinitive form:
duco-ducere-duxi-ductum = lead
facio-facere-feci-factum = make
4. The fourth conjugation is distinguished by *i* in the infinitive form:
audio-audire-audivi-auditum = hear
venio-venire-veni-ventum = come

FINDING THE STEM OF A LATIN VERB

Almost all English derivatives from Latin verbs are formed either from the present infinitive stem (which is the infinitive minus the *-re* ending) or from the perfect passive stem (the fourth principal part minus the *-um* ending.⁴) Very often, when a suffix is added to the present stem of a verb (see next chapter), the distinguishing vowel of the conjugation is also dropped before the suffix is added.

4. For this reason, the third principal part of the verb will not be given in subsequent vocabulary.

<i>Present Infinitive</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Perfect Passive</i> ⁵	<i>Perfect Stem</i>
portare (to carry)	porta-	portatum	portat-
monēre (to warn)	monē-	monitum	monit-
tenēre (to hold)	tenē-	tentum	tent-
ducere (to lead)	duce-	ductum	duct-
agere (to do)	age-	actum	act-
facere (to make)	face-	factum	fact-
venire (to come)	veni-	ventum	vent-
audire (to hear)	audi-	auditum	audit-

Deponent Verbs

There is a class of Latin verbs called *deponent*—verbs that are conjugated with the passive endings only, but that have active meanings. The conjugation to which each deponent verb belongs is identified in the infinitive form already noted. The mark of the passive infinitive is a final *-i*.

1. The first conjugation deponent verb is distinguished by an *a* in the infinitive form:
arbitror-arbitrari-arbitratum = think
hortor-hortari-hortatum = urge
2. The second conjugation deponent verb is distinguished by an *ē* in the infinitive form:
fateor-fatēri-fassum = speak
mereor-merēri-meritum = deserve
3. The third conjugation deponent verb loses the *ēr* in the infinitive and retains only the final *i* as the indication of the infinitive:
sequor-sequi-secutum = follow
revertor-reverti-reversum = return
4. The fourth conjugation deponent verb is distinguished by an *i* in the infinitive form:
experior-experi-expertum = try

5. The perfect passive form is really a verbal adjective (called a participle) as well as a verb. Since all nouns and adjective have gender (masculine, feminine, neuter), every participle has a masculine, feminine, and neuter form, depending on the gender of the noun it is describing. The form previously given (*-um*) is the neuter form. We shall see in the following chapters the consequences of this dual function of the participle.

Examples

<i>Present Infinitive</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Perfect Participle</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>
arbitrari (to think)	arbitra-	arbitratum	arbitrat-
hortari (to urge)	horta-	hortatum	hortat-
fatēri (to speak)	fatē-	fassum	fass-
merēri (to deserve)	merē-	meritum	merit-
sequi (to follow)	seque- ⁶	secutum	secut-
reverti (to return)	reverte-	reversum	revers-
experiri (to try, attempt)	experi-	expertum	expert-

As we shall see, there are many English words that are derived from these verbs.

SOME VERY USEFUL LATIN VERBS

<i>Principal Parts</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>
ago-agere-actum	do, drive	age-	act-
audio-audire-auditum	hear	audi-	audit
capiο-capere-captum ⁷	take	cape- (-cipe-)	capt- (cept-)
cedo-cedere-cessum	go, yield	cede-	cess-
dico-dicere-dictum	say, speak	dice-	dict-
do-dare-datum	give	da-	dat-
duco-ducere-ductum	lead	duce-	duct-
facio-facere-factum	make	face-(-fice-)	fact- (-fect-)
fero-ferre-latum	bear, carry	fer-	lat-
loquor-loqui-locutum	speak	loque-	locut-
mitto-mittere-missum	send	mitte-	miss-
moveo-movēre-motum	move	movē-	mot-
pono-ponere-positum	put, place	pone-	posit-
scribo-scribere-scriptum	write	scribe-	script-
sto-stare-statum	stand	sta-	stat-
teneo-tenēre-tentum	hold	tenē- (-tinē-)	tent-

6. The present stem of third conjugation deponent verbs replaces the distinguishing final *e* that it lost when forming the infinitive.

7. In compounds of *capiο*, *facio*, and *teneo*, the *a* or *e* of the present stem becomes an *i*. For example,

recipio-recipere-receptum = take back

conficio-conficere-confectum = make together, accomplish

retineo-retinēre-retentum = hold back, restrain

venio-venire-ventum	come	veni-	vent-
verto-vertere-versum	turn	verte-	vers-
video-vidēre-visum	see	vidē-	vis-
voco-vocare-vocatum	call	voca-	vocat-

Be Grateful for Small Things

To the great relief of Latin students everywhere, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions are not declined.

Double Meanings

Sometimes, two words will have the same Latin root, but end up appearing in words that have totally different meanings. For example,

egregious and *gregarious* both derive from *grex, gregis* = flock
salary and *saline* both derive from *sal, salis* = salt
money and *admonish* both derive from *moneo-monēre-monitum* = warn.

Check your unabridged English dictionary for current meanings of these words and how these meanings developed.

Doublets

When two different English words derive from the same root and have related meanings but different English spellings, they are called *doublets*. Doublets most often occur when a Latin root comes into English in two different ways: directly from Latin and through an intermediary language, such as French, as well. For example,

amiable and *amicable* both derive from *amicus, amici* = friend
card and *chart* both derive from *charta, chartae* = paper
poison and *potion* both derive from *potio, potionis* = drink
royal and *regal* both derive from *rex, regis* = king
traitor and *tradition* both derive from *trado-tradere-traditum* = hand over

Check your dictionary to see if you can find a word that is a doublet of *fragile*.

Un Faux Ami, or What Did I Say?

A word can be spelled the same in two different languages but have no etymological connection. For example, the French word *coin* means corner, while the German word *kind* means child. The French call these seemingly related words *faux amis*, or false friends.



3 : EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. Find the stem of each of the following Latin nouns or adjectives and list an English derivative and its current usage. Use your unabridged English dictionary to find the derivative and its definition. Remember: the genitive case (minus the ending) gives each noun or adjective its stem.

Examples

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
liber, liberi	free	<u>liber-</u>	<u>liberal</u>	<u>favorable to progress</u>
audax, audacis	bold	<u>audac-</u>	<u>audacity</u>	<u>boldness, daring</u>

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
1. aqua, aquae	water	_____	_____	_____
2. liber, libri	book	_____	_____	_____
3. corpus, corporis	body	_____	_____	_____
4. nox, noctis	night	_____	_____	_____
5. mors, mortis	death	_____	_____	_____
6. bellum, belli	war	_____	_____	_____
7. canis, canis	dog	_____	_____	_____
8. lex, legis	law	_____	_____	_____
9. pes, pedis	foot	_____	_____	_____
10. vulnus, vulneris	wound	_____	_____	_____
11. fama, famae	rumor, report	_____	_____	_____

12. lux, lucis	light	_____	_____	_____
13. os, oris	mouth	_____	_____	_____
14. os, ossis	bone	_____	_____	_____
15. gravis, gravis	heavy	_____	_____	_____
16. vita, vitae	life	_____	_____	_____
17. tempus, temporis	time	_____	_____	_____
18. rus, ruris	countryside	_____	_____	_____

B. In exercises 19–31, find the present or perfect stem, and an English derivative and its current usage for each of the following Latin verbs:

rego-regere-rectum = rule

dormio-dormire-dormitum = sleep

rapio-rapere-raptum = seize

relinquo-relinquere-relictum = leave

fallo-fallere-falsum = deceive

miror-mirari-miratum = wonder at

sentio-sentire-sensum = feel

nascor-nasci-natum = be born

mando-mandare-mandatum = order

pendo-pendere-pensum = hang

voco-vocare-vocatum = call

plaudo-plaudere-plausum = clap

Examples

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Eng. Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
doceo-docēre-doctum (teach)	<u>docē-</u>	<u>docile</u>	<u>easily trained or managed</u>
tango-tangere-tactum (touch)	<u>tange-</u>	<u>tangible</u>	<u>able to be touched; real</u>

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>	<i>Eng. Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
doceo	<u>doct-</u>	<u>doctor</u>	<u>a learned person</u>
tango	<u>tact-</u>	<u>tactile</u>	<u>pertaining to touch</u>

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Eng. Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
19. rego	_____	_____	_____
20. relinquo	_____	_____	_____
21. sentio	_____	_____	_____
22. pendo	_____	_____	_____
23. nascor	_____	_____	_____
24. mando	_____	_____	_____
25. fallo	_____	_____	_____

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>	<i>Eng. Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
26. sentio	_____	_____	_____
27. dormio	_____	_____	_____
28. nascor	_____	_____	_____
29. fallo	_____	_____	_____
30. voco	_____	_____	_____
31. plaudo	_____	_____	_____

C. The following Latin words (32–49) are used in English without any change in form or ending. Find the original Latin meaning of each word by looking in an unabridged English dictionary. Which of these words have changed in meaning, even when they have remained the same in form?

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Latin Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>
32. miser	_____	_____
33. bonus	_____	_____
34. pauper	_____	_____
35. minister	_____	_____

36. album	_____	_____
37. arbiter	_____	_____
38. rumor	_____	_____
39. crux	_____	_____
40. via	_____	_____
41. explicit	_____	_____
42. major	_____	_____
43. gratis	_____	_____
44. onus	_____	_____
45. rancor	_____	_____
46. squalor	_____	_____
47. novella	_____	_____
48. ulterior	_____	_____
49. valor	_____	_____

D. In exercises 50–70, fill in the blank with the word that best defines the italicized word or part of a word in the sentence. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct.

Example

An *audition* allows an actor to be heard.

50. An *agent* is someone who _____ things for you.

51. A *captive* is one who has been _____.

52. A *pedestrian* goes by _____.

53. *Data* are information that is _____.

54. At a *convention*, delegates _____ together.

55. A *factory* is a place where goods are _____.
56. The *inscription* was _____ on the wall of the house.
57. *Status* is an indication of one's social _____.
58. *Transportation* is a means of _____ across.
59. A *deposit* is money _____ down on an item to be purchased.
60. "Please *remit* payment" is a polite way of saying "_____ us back the money."
61. *Elocution* lessons teach you how to _____ out.
62. A *conductor* _____ the orchestra.
63. When he told me he had reverted to smoking, I knew he had _____ back to his bad habits.
64. *Sequential* numbers _____ one another in order.
65. I got a *merit* increase in my paycheck that I _____ because of my hard work.
66. He *exhorted* the students to work harder, but his _____ had no effect.

Sometimes a Latin verb form will become a noun in English. In the following sentences, what is the literal meaning of the italicized word, and what is its current English meaning?

67. The *recipe* called for six eggs, but I had only five. _____
68. His speech contained one *non sequitur* after another, and I became more and more confused.

69. His book had the *imprimatur* of the leading scholars in the field. _____
70. The doctor admitted that he had given me only a *placebo*, but even so, I felt much better.

E. In Exercises 71–78, fill in the blank in each sentence with one of the words listed below that best completes the meaning of the sentence.

<i>mordant</i>	<i>portals</i>	<i>gratis</i>	<i>arbiter</i>
<i>morbid</i>	<i>nausea</i>	<i>amorous</i>	<i>sequence</i>

71. He said he loved me, but I rejected his _____ advances.

72. His _____ remark made me feel as if he wanted to bite me.
73. We couldn't reach an agreement, and so the court appointed an _____ to make the decision.
74. I wanted to be a sailor, but I suffered from _____.
75. Before I had reached the _____ of the building, the guard opened the door.
76. His _____ jokes convinced me that he had a sick sense of humor.
77. He said he was presenting the outline of the course in _____, so I could follow what he was saying.
78. I knew there would be a price to pay, even though my friend said the tickets were _____.

LATIN INTO ENGLISH



Portrait of a man, third century CE (Adana Museum, Turkey)

*I trade with both the living and the dead, for the enrichment of our native tongue.
We have enough in England to supply our necessity, but if we will have things of
magnificence and splendor, we must get them by commerce.*

JOHN DRYDEN (English poet, 1631–1700),
dedication of his translation of Vergil's *Aeneid*

FORMING NEW WORDS

Just as we form adjectives and nouns in English from other English nouns and verbs (e.g., woman, womanly; farm, farmer; move, movement, movable), so too did Latin and Greek. Each ending (suffix) that we add to the stem of a noun or adjective tells us something about the quality or nature of the word.

I. ADJECTIVE-FORMING SUFFIXES
USED WITH LATIN NOUN STEMS

<i>Latin Ending</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-alis, -ialis	having the characteristic of, belonging to	-al, -ial
-anus, -ianus	having the characteristic of, belonging to	-an, -ian
-aris, -arius	having the characteristic of, belonging to	-ar, -ary
-ilis	having the characteristic of, belonging to	-il, -ile
-inus	having the characteristic of, belonging to	-ine
-osus	full of, abounding in	-ose, -ous
-lentus	full of, abounding in	-lent

Examples

<i>Latin noun</i>	<i>English meaning</i>	<i>Latin stem</i>	<i>Latin adjective</i>	<i>English derivative</i>
princeps, principis	chief	princip-	principalis	principal
margo, marginis	edge, boundary	margin-	marginalis	marginal
socius, socii	ally, companion	soci-	socialis	social
vox, vocis	voice	voc-	vocalis	vocal
urbs, urbis	city	urb-	urbanus	urban, urbane
mare, maris	sea	mar-	marinus	marine
familia, familiae	family	famili-	familiaris	familiar
vir, viri	man	vir-	virilis	virile
servus, servi	slave	serv-	servilis	servile
copia, copiae	abundance	copi-	copiosus	copious
virus, viri	poison	vir-	virulentus	virulent

Because Latin nouns and adjectives have gender, the Romans commonly used the masculine, feminine, or neuter form of the adjective as a noun. For example:

- magnus (masculine) = large, but also, the large man
- magna (feminine) = large, but also, the large woman
- magnum (neuter) = large, but also, the large thing

II. NOUN-FORMING SUFFIXES USED WITH LATIN NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

Sometimes we wish to express the abstract quality of a particular noun or adjective, and we do so by forming a new noun (e.g., man, manly, manliness; state, statehood; handsome, handsomeness; kind, kindly, kindliness).

<i>Latin Ending</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-atus	office, group engaged in	-ate
-itas, -ietas	quality of	-ity, -iety
-itudo	abstract state or quality	-itude
-itia	abstract state or quality	-ice
-monium, -monia	abstract state or quality	-mony
-ia, -ium	abstract state or quality	-y
-arium	place where	-arium
-ista	one who believes in	-ist ¹
-ismus	an abstract belief in	-ism

Examples

<i>Latin Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>Latin Derivative</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
princeps, principis	chief	princip-	principatus	principate
brevis, brevis	short	brev-	brevitas	brevity
socius, socii	friend, ally	soci-	societas	society
varium, varii	different	vari-	varietas	variety
virilis, virilis	manly	viril-	virilitas	virility
magnus, magni	large	magn-	magnitudo	magnitude
gratum, grati	pleasing	grat-	gratitudo	gratitude
pater, patris	father	patr-	patrimonium	patrimony
custos, custodis	guard	custod-	custodia	custody
sol, solis	sun	sol-	solarium	solarium
servus, servi	slave	serv-	servitudo and servitia	servitude service

1. These Latin endings are actually derived from Greek suffixes and are most often used to form *learned borrowings* (see note 5 below) in English.

III. DIMINUTIVE-FORMING
SUFFIXES WITH LATIN NOUNS

We may indicate the smallness or familiarity of an object or person by the addition of a suffix (e.g., drop, droplet).

<i>Latin Ending</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-culus	-cule
-ellus	-el
-illus	-il
-olus	-ole
-uleus, -ulus	-ule

Examples

<i>Latin Noun</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Latin Diminutive Form</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
corpus	body	corpusculus	corpuscle
mus	mouse	musculus	muscle
moles	mass	moleculus	molecule
novum	new	novellus	novel
saccus	bag	sacellus	satchel
pupus	boy	pupillus	pupil (student)
pupa	girl	pupilla	pupil (part of the eye)
gladius	sword	gladiolus	gladiolus
area	ground	areola	areole
nux	nut	nuculeus	nucleus
modus	measure	modulus	module

IV. NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES FORMED
FROM LATIN VERBS

We may also make a noun or adjective from a verb by the addition of a suffix; the newly formed noun or adjective retains the quality of action in the verb (e.g., the verb *make* > the noun *maker*; the verb *like* > the adjective *likeable*). In Latin, nouns and adjectives may be formed from either the present or perfect passive stem of the verb. Remember that the present stem will often lose its final vowel, especially if it is joined to a suffix that begins with a vowel.

A. Nouns and Adjectives Formed from the Present Stem of Latin Verbs

<i>Latin Noun Ending</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-mentum	state of, quality of	-ment
-bulus, -bulum	means of, place of, result of	-ble
-men	means of, place of, result of	-men
-or	means of, place of, result of	-or
-culus, culum	means of, place of, result of	-cle

<i>Latin Adjectival Ending</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-bilis, -ilis	capable of being	-ble, -ile
-ax, acis	inclined to	-acious
-uus; -ulus	inclined to	-uous; -ulous
-idus	inclined to	-id
-ns, -ntis (singular)	indicates present participle	-nt ²
-ntes or -ntia (plural)	indicates present participle	-nce or -ncy

Examples

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Latin Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
sto-stare	stand	sta-	stabulum	stable (noun)
			stabilis	stable (adj.)
doceo-docēre	teach	docē-	docilis	docile
			documentum	document
specio-specere	look at	spece-	specimen	specimen
rigeo-rigēre	stiffen	rigē-	rigor	rigor
			rigidus	rigid
vivo-vivere	live	vive-	vividus	vivid
			vivax, vivacis	vivacious
veho-vehere	carry, ride	vehe-	vehiculum	vehicle
audeo-audēre	dare	audē-	audax, audacis	audacious
credo-credere	believe	crede-	credulus	credulous
			credibilis	credible

2. A participle is a verb form used as an adjective; the present active participle is formed most often in English by adding the suffix *-ing* to the basic form of the verb—e.g., the running man, the smiling woman, the driving rain. Because Latin participles are adjectives, they can be declined and have number. All present participles belong to the third declension.



" | MISS THE GOOD OLD DAYS WHEN ALL WE HAD TO WORRY ABOUT WAS NOUNS AND VERBS."

(www.cartoonstock.com)

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Latin Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
tango-tangere	touch	tange-	tangens, -entis tangibilis	tangent tangible
vaco-vacare	be empty	vaca-	vacuus vacans, -antis vacantia	vacuous vacant vacancy
tolero-tolerare	bear	tolera-	tolerans, -antis tolerantia	tolerant tolerance
ago-agere	do, drive	age-	agens, -entis agentia	agent agency
rego-regere	rule	rege-	regens, -entis regentia	regent regency
audio-audire	hear	audi-	audientes	audience

B. Noun- and Adjective-Forming Suffixes with the Perfect Passive Stem of Latin Verbs³

<i>Latin Ending</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-or	he who	-or
-rix	she who	-rix
-ura	act of, result of	-ure
-orius; -orium	that which is used for	-ory; -orium
-ivus	given to	-ive
-io, -ionis	state of, result of, process of	-ion
-ilis	capable of being	-ile

Examples

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>	<i>Latin Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
ago-agere-actum	act-	actor activus actio, actionis	actor active action
doceo-docēre-doctum	doct-	doctor	doctor
sto-stare-statum	stat-	statura statio, stationis	stature station
facio-facere-factum	fact-	factorium factio, factionis	factory faction
capio-capere-captum	capt-	captor captura captivus	captor capture captive
audio-audire-auditum	audit-	auditorium auditio, auditionis auditor	auditorium audition auditor
mitto-mittere-misum	miss-	missio, missionis missilis	mission missile
tango-tangere-tactum	tact-	tactilis	tactile
video-vidēre-visum	vis-	visibilis visio, visionis	visible vision
voco-vocare-vocatum	vocat-	vocatio, vocationis	vocation

3. The fourth principal part of the verb, from which the perfect passive stem is derived, is also a participle, but passive in meaning, and refers to some event that happened in the past. It is most often expressed in English by the suffixes *-ed* and *-en*: e.g., *scrambled eggs* (eggs that have been scrambled), *broken leg* (a leg that has been broken), or a *married man* (a man who has been married). Although the stem has a passive meaning, it can take on an active meaning when a suffix is added (see examples above).

Can You Spell That?

Although knowing the Latin root of an English word often can help you figure out its spelling, unfortunately it doesn't always work. For example, the person who holds a piece of property should be a *tenent*, since its Latin root is *teneo-tenēre*. What is the correct English spelling of this word? Check your dictionary to find out the reason why.

V. VERBAL SUFFIXES

A. The Romans added the verbs *ago*, *facio*, and *capio* to adjectives and nouns to form new verbs, adjectives, and nouns. The newly formed verbs then had the meaning of to *do*, *make*, or *take* a certain state.

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Latin Compound Verb Form</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
ago	do, drive	-igo	-igate; -igation
facio	make, do	-ficio	-fy; -fic; -ficate
capio	take	-cipio	-cipate; -cipation

Examples

<i>Latin Adjective or Noun</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Compound Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
castus, casti	pure	castigo (make pure)	castigate
navis, navis	ship	navigo (drive a ship)	navigation
pax, pacis	peace	pacifico ⁴ (make peaceful)	pacify; pacific
pars, partis	part	participo (take part)	participate

B. By adding the suffix *-sco* to a verb stem, noun, or adjective, Latin indicates the process of beginning or continuing.

4. Note that in compounds formed from a noun or adjective together with *-ficio* or *-cipio*, the final *-i* of the verb stem often disappears.

Examples

<i>Latin Root</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Latin Compound Form</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
candeo–candēre	shine	candescō = begin to shine	candescēt candescēce
seneo–senēre	be old	senescō = grow old	senescēt senescēce
quies, quietis	rest	quiescō = become quiet	quiescēt quiescēce

VI. VERBAL LEARNED BORROWINGS⁵

There are many learned borrowings in English that are derived from Latin verb stems:

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
caedo–caedere–caesum	kill	–cide	killer, killed
facio–facere–factum	make	–fact	made
fero–ferre–latum	carry, bear	–fer	carrier
voro–vorare–voratum	eat	–vore	eater

Examples

<i>Latin Noun</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>	<i>English Noun</i>	<i>English Adjective</i>
frater, fratris	brother	–cide	fratricide	fratricidal
ars, artis	skill	–fact	artifact	artificial
conus, coni	cone	–fer	conifer	coniferous
caro, carnis	flesh	–vore	carnivore	carnivorous

5. A learned borrowing is a word based on a Greek or Latin root, but given a meaning that it did not have in Latin or Ancient Greek—e.g., *telephone*, which is formed from the ancient Greek words *tele-* (from a distance) and *phone* (sound). The Greeks of the fifth century BCE obviously did not have telephones, but because of the high esteem in which classical learning was held, the ancient Greek language was used to name this nineteenth-century invention.

What Do You Call That Word?

All the terms used to describe the parts of speech in English are derived from Latin roots.

- noun* = a word referring to a person, place, thing, state, or quality (*nomen, nominis* = name).
- verb* = a word that expresses, action, existence, or occurrence (*verbum, verbi* = word).
- adjective* = a word that modifies, or qualifies, a noun (*adjicio-adjicere-adjectum* = add to).
- adverb* = a word that modifies or qualifies a verb or adjective.
- preposition* = a word placed before a noun to form a phrase that modifies another noun, adjective, or verb (*praepono-proponere-praepositum* = place before).
- conjunction* = a connector between words, phrases, clauses, or sentences (*conjungo-conjungere-conjunctum* = join together).

Gender Differences

Gender is a grammatical category that is used to classify nouns, pronouns, and adjectives (and in some languages, verbs). In the Romance languages, the gender of nouns can be determined by their articles (*the*). These articles are derived from the masculine and feminine forms of the Latin demonstrative adjective *ille, illa* = *that*

<i>Latin</i>	<i>Spanish</i>	<i>French</i>	<i>Italian</i>
<i>ille</i> = that (man)	el	le	il
<i>illa</i> = that (woman)	la	la	la

What Does That Mean?

Sometimes an English word will retain its singular and plural Latin endings when it comes into English. For example, the Latin verb *ago-agere* produces *agenda*, which literally means “the things that are to be done,” while *erro-errare-erratum* (wander, go astray) gives us *erratum* (singular) and *errata* (plural). How are these words used in English?

Anglo-Saxon Suffixes

Not all English suffixes are Greek or Latin in origin. Old English (Anglo-Saxon) has left its mark on the formation of modern English vocabulary as well.

<i>Old English Suffix</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Example</i>
-ard	possessor of	dullard
-er, -ster	agent	doer, gangster
-less	without	toothless
-ful	full of	truthful
-some	full of	quarrelsome, toothsome
-ish	somewhat	foolish
-ness	quality of, state of	happiness, largeness
-dom	state of being, domain of	kingdom, martyrdom
-hood	state, condition, character	motherhood, neighborhood
-ship	state, condition, character	kingship, kinship



4 : EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. What English adjectives are derived from the following Latin nouns? What is the current meaning of each adjective? Use the endings in section I of this chapter. If necessary, consult an unabridged English dictionary.

Examples

<i>Latin Noun</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Adjective</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
vulgus, vulgi > vulgaris	crowd	<u>vulgar</u>	<u>crude, unrefined</u>
puer, pueri > puerilis	boy	<u>puerile</u>	<u>immature, childish</u>

<i>Latin Noun</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Adjective</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
1. tempus, temporis	time	_____	_____
2. mundus, mundi	world	_____	_____
3. populus, populi	people	_____	_____
4. corpus, corporis	body	_____	_____
5. miles, militis	soldier	_____	_____
6. fabula, fabulae	story	_____	_____
7. lex, legis	law	_____	_____
8. nomen, nominis	name	_____	_____
9. ops, opis	wealth, power	_____	_____
10. verbum, verbi	word	_____	_____
11. stella, stellae	star	_____	_____

B. Which English nouns are derived from the following Latin adjectives? What is the current meaning of each noun? Use the endings in Section II. If necessary, consult an unabridged English dictionary.

Examples

<i>Latin Adjective</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Noun</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
avarum, avari	<u>greedy</u>	<u>avarice</u>	<u>greed</u>
fortis, fortis	<u>brave, strong</u>	<u>fortitude</u>	<u>moral strength, bravery</u>

<i>Latin Adjective</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Noun</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
12. clarum, clari	clear	_____	_____
13. malum, mali	bad	_____	_____
14. brevis, brevis	short	_____	_____
15. novum, novi	new	_____	_____
16. acer, acris	harp	_____	_____
17. varium, varii	different	_____	_____
18. memor, memoris	mindful	_____	_____
19. sanctum, sancti	holy	_____	_____
20. gravis, gravis	heavy	_____	_____

C. The following words have been made up, but they have been given Latin adjectival or noun endings. Identify each as either a noun or an adjective, and give the meaning of the suffix.

	<i>Noun or Adjective?</i>	<i>Meaning of Suffix</i>
21. spragid	_____	_____
22. fulmatorium	_____	_____
23. granatary	_____	_____
24. crellacious	_____	_____

25. dractator	_____	_____
26. stractical	_____	_____
27. grenulent	_____	_____
28. lorbimony	_____	_____
29. traminiety	_____	_____
30. spranabile	_____	_____
31. muvacture	_____	_____
32. revulist	_____	_____
33. quacticule	_____	_____
34. scrimitude	_____	_____

D. What English nouns and adjectives are derived from the present stems (second principal part) of the following Latin verbs? What is the current usage of each noun or adjective? Use the endings in Section IV, part A. If necessary, consult an unabridged English dictionary.

Examples

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Eng. Noun or Adj.</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
vivo-vivere-victum	<u>live</u>	<u>vivē-</u>	<u>vivid</u>	<u>intense, full of life</u>
valeo-valēre ⁶	<u>be strong</u>	<u>valē-</u>	<u>valor</u>	<u>boldness, courage</u>

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Pres. Stem</i>	<i>Eng. Noun or Adj.</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
35. curro-currere-cursum	run	_____	_____	_____
36. experior-experiri-expertum	try	_____	_____	_____
37. recipio-recipient-receptum	take back	_____	_____	_____
38. miror-mirari-miratum	wonder at	_____	_____	_____
39. stupeo-stupēre	be stunned	_____	_____	_____

6. Some verbs do not have a perfect passive system.

40. sedeo-sedēre-sessum	sit	_____	_____	_____
41. fallo-fallere-falsum	deceive	_____	_____	_____
42. clamo-clamare-clamatum	shout	_____	_____	_____
43. solvo-solvere-solutum	loosen	_____	_____	_____
44. patior-pati-passum	suffer	_____	_____	_____

E. Which English nouns and adjectives are derived from the perfect stems of the following Latin verbs? What is the current usage of each noun or adjective? Use the endings in Section IV, part B. If necessary, consult your dictionary.

Examples

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Perf. Stem</i>	<i>Eng. Noun or Adj.</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
tolero-tolerare-toleratum	bear, endure	<u>tolerat-</u>	<u>toleration</u>	<u>endurance</u>
jungo-jungere-junctum	join	<u>junct-</u>	<u>juncture</u>	<u>act of joining</u>

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Perf. Stem</i>	<i>Eng. Noun or Adj.</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
45. nascor-nasci-natum	be born	_____	_____	_____
46. lego-legere-lectum	read, choose	_____	_____	_____
47. curro-currere-cursum	run	_____	_____	_____
48. morior-mori-mortuum	die	_____	_____	_____
49. sedeo-sedēre-sessum	sit	_____	_____	_____
50. fallo-fallere-falsum	deceive	_____	_____	_____
51. patior-pati-passum	suffer, bear	_____	_____	_____
52. sentio-sentire-sensum	feel	_____	_____	_____
53. solvo-solvere-solutum	loosen	_____	_____	_____
54. muto-mutare-mutatum	change	_____	_____	_____
55. frango-frangere-fractum	break	_____	_____	_____

F. Fill in the blank with the literal meaning⁷ of the italicized word or part of the word. Make sure that your answers are grammatically correct.

56. All his arguments were *fallacious*, but everyone was _____ by them.
57. His *sanctimonious* words revealed that he thought he was _____ than everyone else.
58. They tried to revivify the patient, but it became clear that he was no longer _____.
59. The *mutability* of our circumstances shows that our lives are subject to _____.
60. It is said that “*brevity* is the soul of wit,” but some speakers never learn to keep their comments _____.
61. If you have a *sedentary* job, you will spend a lot of time _____.
62. The *clamor* in the street grew as the crowd _____ their demands.
63. She gave the document a *cursory* glance as her eye _____ down the page.
64. I asked him to *verbalize* his thoughts, but he couldn’t find the _____.
65. The *Maritime* Provinces of Canada are situated by the _____.
66. In Roman *gladiatorial* combat, the chief weapon of the fighters was the _____.
67. His *voracious* appetite drove him to _____ everything in the refrigerator.
68. I was told he had a *mortal* illness, but I hoped he would not _____.
69. Identify the functions of the italicized words (nouns, adjectives, verbs?) in the following sentence: The *spragid glomularity* of the *stractibulous bananitude oblifected* me.

7. In this, and in all following exercises, a blank represents the literal definition of the italicized word or part of the word. In the context of these exercises, the literal meaning of a word or part of a word is the original meaning of the Greek or Latin root.

G. Fill in the blank with a word of the opposite meaning chosen from the list below.

Check your dictionary if you are not sure of the meaning.

<i>scarce</i>	<i>silent</i>	<i>freedom</i>	<i>concrete</i>	<i>rebellious</i>
<i>peaceful</i>	<i>poor</i>	<i>secretive</i>	<i>separation</i>	<i>otherworldly</i>

70. juncture _____

71. copious _____

72. mundane _____

73. turbulent _____

74. vocal _____

75. docile _____

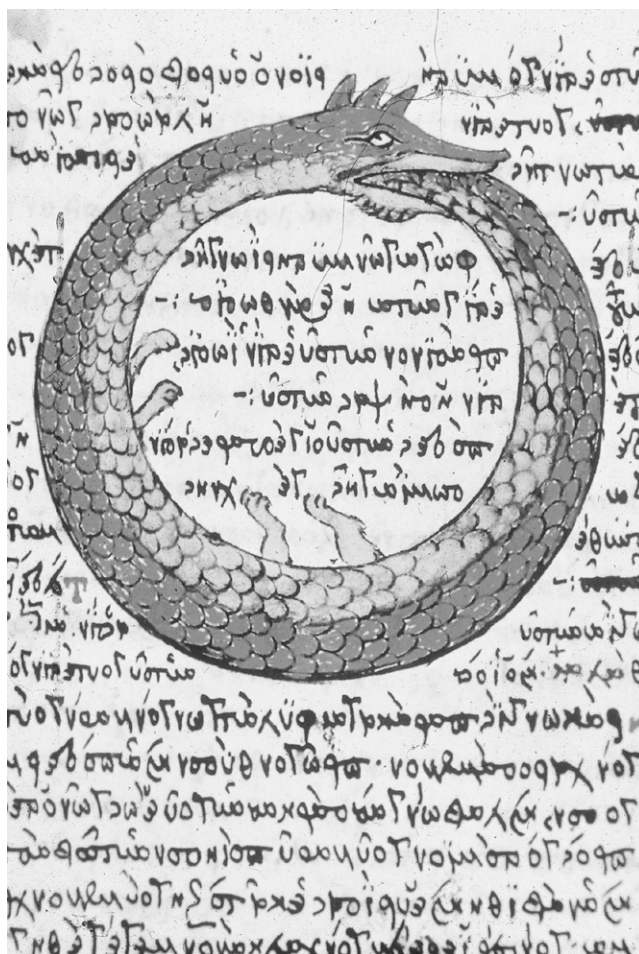
76. intangible _____

77. opulent _____

78. candid _____

79. servitude _____

HOW GREEK WORKS



Greek magical papyrus. The snake swallowing its tail is a symbol of eternity. (Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris)

Graecum est. Non potest legi. (It's Greek to me; it cannot be read.)

Comment of a medieval scribe who could not decipher the Greek words found in his Latin manuscript

Like Latin, Greek is an inflected language with declensions and conjugations. Because most English words derived from Greek roots are learned borrowings, or because the Greek word had passed into Latin before coming into English at a later time, there are not the same strict rules, as there are for Latin-based words, for the formation of Greek-based English vocabulary.¹

THE GREEK ALPHABET

<i>Greek Letter</i>	<i>Greek Name</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>
α, A	άλφα (alpha)	ă (short)	a
β, B	βῆτα (beta)	b	b
γ, Γ	γάμμα (gamma)	g (hard)	g
δ, Δ	δέλτα (delta)	d	d
ε, E	ε ψιλον (epsilon)	ě (short)	e
ζ, Z	ζῆτα (zēta)	dz	z
η, H	ῆτα (ēta)	ā (long)	e
θ, Θ	θῆτα (thēta)	th	th
ι, I	ἰῶτα (iota)	ī (short)	i
κ, K	κάππα (kappa)	k	c or k
λ, Λ	λάμβδα (lambda)	l	l
μ, M	μῦ (mu)	m	m
ν, N	νῦ (nu)	n	n
ξ, Ξ	ξῖ (xi)	x	x
ο, O	ὀ μικρόν (omicron)	ō (short)	o
π, Π	πί (pi)	p	p
ρ, P	ῥῶ (rho)	r	r or rh
σ, ς, Σ	σίγμα (sigma)	s	s
τ, T	ταῦ (tau)	t	t
υ, Y	ὕ ψιλόν (upsilon)	u	y or u
φ, Φ	φῖ (phi)	f	ph
χ, X	χῖ (chi)	ch	ch
ψ, Ψ	ψῖ (psi)	ps	ps
ω, Ω	ὦ μέγα (omega)	ō (long)	o

1. For that reason, the genitive case of nouns and adjectives will be given only when it is the basis for the formation of the English derivative.

RULES FOR TRANSLITERATING GREEK WORDS INTO ENGLISH

1. Diphthongs (two vowels that blend into a single sound):

<i>Diphthong</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>Greek Example</i>	<i>English Transliteration</i>
αι	ae, e	φαινόμενον ² Αἰθιοπία	phenomenon Ethiopia
αυ	au	αὐτό	auto (self, same)
ει	ei, i, e	χεῖρ	chir (hand)
ευ	eu	εὐλογία ψεῦδον	eulogia (praise) pseudon (false)
οι	oe, i, e	ἀμοιβή	ameba <i>or</i> amoeba (change)
ου	ou, u	Μοῦσα	Muse

2. upsilon (υ) is usually transliterated as γ:

κύκλος = cyclos (circle)

Αἰσχυλος = Aeschylus³

τύπος = typos (figure, form)

When it is part of a diphthong, however, it is transliterated as a *u*.

τραῦμα = trauma (wound)

ψεῦδον = pseudon (false)

3. If a gamma (γ) appears before another gamma, kappa (κ), chi (χ), or xi (ξ), the gamma is pronounced in Greek, and transliterated in English, as an *n*.

ἄγγελος = angelos (messenger)

φάλαγξ = phalanx (phalanx, body of troops)

ἄγκυρα = ankyra (anchor)

βρόγχος = bronchos (windpipe)

4. If a word begins with a vowel, that vowel is marked with what is called a *breathing sign*. There are two breathing signs: smooth and rough. If a word has a smooth breathing sign, the vowel is given its original value; if it has a rough

2. Almost every Greek word has an accent mark, but it does not affect the transliteration of the word.

3. Many Greek words were borrowed by the Romans and given Latin endings; thus, the Greek *-os, -on* becomes the Latin *-us, -um*.

breathing mark, it is pronounced and transliterated with an initial *h* before the vowel.

smooth breathing sign = ‘

ἀντί = anti (against)

ἰῶτα = iota

rough breathing sign = ‘

ἁρμονία = harmonia (harmony)

ῥα = hora (time)

5. If a word begins with a rho (ρ), the rho always receives a rough breathing sign, and is transliterated as *rh*. If it appears elsewhere in the word, it is transliterated as an *r*.

ῥήτωρ = rhetor (speaker)

ῥόμβος = rhombos (rhombus)

δέρμα = derma (skin)

περί = peri (around)

6. If a word begins with a kappa (κ), it is transliterated either as a *c* or a *k*.



This death mask, made of gold and dating to the sixteenth century BCE, was labeled by the archaeologist Heinrich Schliemann as the “mask of Agamemnon.” (National Museum, Athens)

COGNATES

Because both Latin and Greek are members of the Indo-European family and therefore have a common ancestry, many Latin words have Greek cognates (words that are derived from the same earlier forms). Thus we find the following verbs in Greek that are related to Latin verbs we have already seen on the list of “Very Useful Latin Verbs.” These verbs have the same meaning.

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Greek Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ago	ago (ἄγω)	do, drive
fero	phero (φέρω)	bear, carry
sto	histemi (ἵστημι)	stand, cause to stand
do	didomi (δίδωμι)	give

It's Greek to Me

It's fairly obvious why we call the series of letters with which we construct English written words the *alphabet*, but Greek letters have made their way into our language in other ways:

- Among social animals, such as wolves or chimpanzees, an *alpha male* describes the “leader of the pack” who asserts his authority through intimidation and physical force. It is also used unflatteringly to describe a human male with the same qualities.
- The triangular shape of the capital form of the letter *delta* (Δ) gave its name to the geographical feature caused by the divergence of a river into two branches at its mouth.
- The letter iota is so small and sometimes indistinct that it may be overlooked. Thus, it has come to mean a very tiny measure. “I don't care one iota if I ever learn the Greek and Latin roots of English.”

And then, of course, there are all those scientific terms such as gamma rays, muons, and taus that physicists like to toss around in casual conversation.

What Did You Say?

The ancient Greeks, who were resolutely monolingual and not at all interested in the systematic study of other languages, dismissively defined anyone who did not speak Greek as one who spoke a *glossa barbaros* (γλῶσσα βάρβαρος), a “foreign language.”



5 : E X E R C I S E S

NAME _____

A. Transliterate the following Greek words according to the rules given in this chapter. Which of these words came into English unchanged? If the word is unchanged, what is its current meaning? Even if the word does not exist in the transliterated form in English, can you figure out what it might mean in Greek? Use your dictionary as a research tool.

Example

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>Unchanged?</i>	<i>Current or Possible Meaning</i>
θεός	<u>theos</u>	<u>no</u>	<u>god (cf. theology)</u>
γένεσις	<u>genesis</u>	<u>yes</u>	<u>beginning, birth</u>

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>Unchanged?</i>	<i>Current or Possible Meaning</i>
1. δρᾶμα	_____	_____	_____
2. ἵππος	_____	_____	_____
3. ξένος	_____	_____	_____
4. ἀμφί	_____	_____	_____
5. τρόπος	_____	_____	_____
6. στρατηγός	_____	_____	_____
7. πρέσβυς	_____	_____	_____
8. μηχανή	_____	_____	_____
9. παραβολή	_____	_____	_____
10. ὑπό	_____	_____	_____
11. φύσις	_____	_____	_____

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>Unchanged?</i>	<i>Current or Possible Meaning</i>
12. λόγος	_____	_____	_____
13. μέθοδος	_____	_____	_____
14. παραγραφή	_____	_____	_____
15. σύνθεσις	_____	_____	_____
16. σπέρμα	_____	_____	_____
17. τράπεζα	_____	_____	_____
18. φάρμακον	_____	_____	_____
19. χάρισμα	_____	_____	_____
20. αἴσθησις	_____	_____	_____
21. λέων	_____	_____	_____
22. χαρακτήρ	_____	_____	_____
23. ἄξιωμα	_____	_____	_____
24. βιβλίον	_____	_____	_____
25. πολυγαμία	_____	_____	_____
26. ἔμφασις	_____	_____	_____
27. ὁμογενής	_____	_____	_____
28. καρδία	_____	_____	_____
29. ὠκεανός	_____	_____	_____
30. βάρβαρος	_____	_____	_____
31. κωμωδία	_____	_____	_____
32. λευκός	_____	_____	_____
33. λήθαργος	_____	_____	_____
34. μυθολογία	_____	_____	_____

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>Unchanged?</i>	<i>Current or Possible Meaning</i>
35. διάλυσις	_____	_____	_____
36. νύμφη	_____	_____	_____
37. λύρα	_____	_____	_____
38. θρόνος	_____	_____	_____
39. γάγγλιον	_____	_____	_____
40. μανία	_____	_____	_____
41. νεκρός	_____	_____	_____
42. μίασμα	_____	_____	_____
43. εικών	_____	_____	_____
44. σχῆμα	_____	_____	_____
45. μνημονικός	_____	_____	_____

B. Choose five of the transliterated words above (1–45) that have come into English unchanged and use that word in an English sentence. If necessary consult your English dictionary.

46. _____

47. _____

48. _____

49. _____

50. _____

GREEK INTO ENGLISH



Delphi, the home of the oracle of the god Apollo

*Numbering, preeminent among subtle devices,
I found for them, and the combining of letters,
For remembering all things, the mother of the Muses
Skilled in all crafts.*

AESCHYLUS (fifth-century BCE tragic playwright), *Prometheus Bound*, ll. 459 ff.

GREEK SUFFIXES

As was previously noted, the rules for the formation of Greek-based words in English are not as regularized as for Latin-based vocabulary. Thus, only those Greek suffixes most frequently found in English are given.

I. ADJECTIVE-FORMING SUFFIXES

<i>Greek Adjectival Suffix</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-icon (-ικον)	pertaining to	-ic
-acon (-ακον)	pertaining to	-ac
-tikon (-τικον)	pertaining to	-tic
-oides (-οειδης)	like, having the form of	-oid ¹

Examples

<i>Greek Noun</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Greek Adjective</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
polis (πόλις)	city	politicon (πολιτικόν)	politic
cosmos (κόσμος)	order, universe	cosmeticon (κοσμητικόν)	cosmetic
		cosmicon (κοσμικόν)	cosmic
mania (μανία)	madness	manicon (μανίκον)	manic
sphera (σφαῖρα)	ball	spheroides (σφαιροειδής)	spheroid

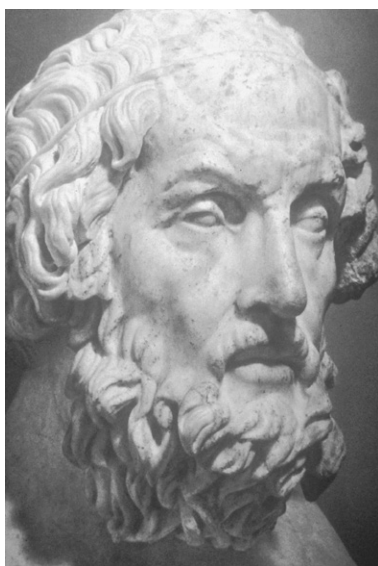
II. NOUN-FORMING SUFFIXES

<i>Greek Noun Suffix</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-ia (-ία)	quality of	-ia, -y
-ica, tica (-ικα, -τικά)	art, science, study of	-ics, -tics
-tes (-της)	one who does	-t
-ter, -tor (-τηρ, -τωρ)	one who does	-ter, -tor
-ma (-μα)	result of	-ma, -me, -m
-sis, -sia (-σις, -σια)	result of	-sis, -sy
-eion, -eon (-ειον, -αιον)	place for	-eum, -aeum (Latinate form)
-iskos (-ισκος)	diminutive	-isk
-ismos (-ισμος)	abstract quality; belief in, theory of	-ism ²

1. The adjectival suffix *-oid* is often used in English as a learned borrowing to mean *similar to* or *resembling*.
2. The noun-forming suffix *-ism* is often used as a learned borrowing to indicate a belief in or adherence to a particular point of view—political, religious, or otherwise—e.g., *communism*, *realism*, *monotheism*. The suffix *-ist* is used either to form adjectives or to indicate a person who subscribes to a particular position: e.g., *communist*, *realist*, *monotheist*.

Examples

<i>Greek Noun or Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Greek Noun</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Eng. Derivative</i>
apologeomai (ἀπολογέομαι)	defend	apologia (ἀπολογία)	defense	apology
polis (πόλις)	city	politica (πολιτικά)	city affairs	politics
gymnazo (γυμνάζω)	exercise	gymnastes (γυμναστής)	exerciser	gymnast
hypocrinomai (ὑποκρίνομαι)	answer, act	hypocrites (ὑποκριτής)	actor	hypocrite
		hypocrisia (ὑποκρισία)	acting	hypocrisy
Musa (Μοῦσα)	Muse	Mouseion (Μοῦσειον)	place of the Muses	museum
aster (ἀστήρ)	star	asteriskos (ἀστερίσκος)	little star	asterisk
baino (βάινω)	go	basis (βάσις)	step	basis
tithemi (τίθημι)	put, place	thema (θέμα)	deposit	theme
		thesis (θέσις)	putting	thesis



The poet Homer, whom the ancient Greeks credited with the creation of *The Iliad* and *The Odyssey* (Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York)

III. LEARNED BORROWINGS

The following suffixes are Greek in origin but most often appear in English as learned borrowings.

<i>Greek Base</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Greek Suffix Form</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
logos (λόγος)	word	-logia (-λογία)	-logy	art, science, study of
cratos (κράτος)	power	-cratia <i>or</i> -crasia (-κρατία, -κρασία) -crates (-κρατης) -craticon (-κρατικον)	-cracy -crat -cratic	rule by ruler pertaining to rule
arche (ἀρχή)	rule ³	-archia (-αρχία)	-archy	rule by
archon (ἀρχων)	ruler	-archos (-αρχος)	-arch	ruler
grapho (γράφω)	I write	-graphia (-γραφία)	-graph -graphy	tool for writing writing
gramma (γράμμα)	letter	-gramma (-γραμμά)	-gram	thing written
scopeo (σκοπέω)	look at		-scope -scopy	tool for viewing viewing
metron (μέτρον)	measure	-metria (-μετρία)	-metry -meter -metric	science of measuring tool for measuring pertaining to measure
nomos (νόμος)	law, rule	-nomia (-νομία)	-nomy	rules of
nomicos (νομικός)	conventional	-nomicon (-νομικον)	-nomic	pertaining to rules
-izein ⁴ (-ιζειν)			-ize	(verb-forming suffix)

3. Arche (ἀρχή) also means “beginning” or “first in authority.” When used as a prefix in English, it usually means “chief”: e.g., *archbishop*, *archenemy*, *architect*.

4. *-ize*, a verb-forming suffix that denotes action, is frequently used as a learned borrowing in English in the formation of neologisms, such as *sanitize*, *customize*, etc. Neologisms are new words or expressions, which English is forming all the time.



6 : EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. Transliterate each of the following Greek words and, using your unabridged dictionary, find an English derivative and its current usage.

Example

<i>Greek Word/English Meaning</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
καρδία (heart)	<u>cardia</u>	<u>cardiac</u>	<u>pertaining to the heart</u>

<i>Greek Word/English Meaning</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
1. τόπος (place)	_____	_____	_____
2. σχολή (leisure)	_____	_____	_____
3. άγών (contest)	_____	_____	_____
4. έθνος (nation)	_____	_____	_____
5. κινέω (move)	_____	_____	_____
6. πρᾶγμα (business)	_____	_____	_____
7. αίρεσις (choice)	_____	_____	_____
8. αίτία (cause)	_____	_____	_____
9. εκκλησία (assembly)	_____	_____	_____
10. κλίνη (bed)	_____	_____	_____
11. όφθαλμός (eye)	_____	_____	_____
12. λίθος (stone)	_____	_____	_____
13. πόλεμος (war)	_____	_____	_____
14. κεφαλή (head)	_____	_____	_____
15. χρόνος (time)	_____	_____	_____

B. Clearly, anyone or anything can be in charge. What is each of the following forms of governance?

English Word	Form of Governance	English Word	Form of Governance
16. gastrocracy	_____	21. plutocracy	_____
17. patriarchy	_____	22. oligarchy	_____
18. ochlocracy	_____	23. hierarchy	_____
19. gynecocracy	_____	24. dyarchy	_____
20. matriarchy	_____	25. gerontocracy	_____

C. Fill in each blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct. If you are not sure of the derivation, check your dictionary. Some of the Greek vocabulary is to be found in the exercises above.

Example

A microscope is a tool for viewing small objects.

26. *Geology* is the _____ the earth; *geography* is _____; *geometry* is _____.
27. An *anarchist* _____ a lack of _____.
28. A *thermometer* is an _____ heat. [thermos (θερμός) = warm]
29. Your *archenemy* is your _____ foe.
30. In many science-fiction movies, robots are called *androids* because they _____ humans. [aner, andros (άνήρ, άνδρός) = man]
31. *Dynamism* is _____ that all phenomena in the world can be explained by the action of force. (dynamis [δύναμις] = force, power)
32. What is the literal meaning of *basilisk*? (βασιλεύς = king) _____ What sort of creature was it thought to be? _____
33. An *ophthalmoscope* is an _____ the _____.
34. In ancient Athens, the *polemarch* was the individual who was the _____ in times of _____.

35. *Topography* is literally _____ about _____. What is its current usage?
36. A *chronometer* is an _____.
37. *Gerontology* is _____.
38. Some students think that *scholastic* effort should be made only when they have _____.
39. A monolith is a monument that consists of a single stone. What is the current meaning of *monolithic*? _____ (λίθος = stone)
40. In 399 BCE, the Greek philosopher Socrates was put on trial in Athens on charges, among others, of corrupting the young. According to his pupil Plato, in court he gave a speech that we now call the *Apology*. Since Socrates would never have said that he was sorry about anything he had done, what was he doing in this speech? _____

D. Construct a sentence using an English derivative of the following Greek words:

41. πράγμα _____
42. αἰτία _____
43. ἄγών _____
44. ἐκκλησία _____
45. κινέω _____

LATIN *and* GREEK PREFIXES



A sixth-century BCE bronze statue of the Greek hero Heracles (National Museum, Athens)

*And though thou hadst small Latine and less Greeke,
From thence to honour thee, I would not seeke
For names.*

BEN JONSON (seventeenth-century English playwright and poet)

“To the Memory of My Beloved,
the Author, Mr. William Shakespeare” (1623)

Prefixes formed from Latin and Greek prepositions are most often adverbial, that is, they qualify or modify some action that is described by the word to which the prefix is attached.

I. LATIN PREPOSITIONS

<i>Latin Preposition</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
ab, a	from, away from	ab-, a-	abduct, avert
ad ¹	to, toward, for	ac-, ad-, af-, ag-, al-, an-, ap-, ar-, as-, at-	accept, admit, affirm, aggression, allocate, announce, applaud, arrive, assume, attack
ante	before	ante-	antecedent
cum ²	with, together	com-, col-, con- cor-, co- ³	compose, collect, convene, correct, cohere
circum	around	circum-	circumnavigate
contra ⁴	against	contra-	contradict
de	down, from, about	de-	depose
ex, e	out of	ex-, e-, ef-	except, edict, effort
extra	outside	extra-	extraordinary
in	in, into, on	in-, il-, im-	incur, illusion, import
inter	between	inter-	interact
intra	within	intra-	intravenous
ob	to, against	ob-, oc-, of-, op-	object, occur, offer, oppose
per	through, by	per-, pel-	permit, perfect, pellucid
post	after	post-	postpone
prae	before	pre-	predict, prefer
pro	in front of, on behalf of	pro-	propose, provide

1. Certain consonants (such as *b*, *m*, and *n*) often take on the sound of the following consonant: e.g., *sub* + *pono* (place) > *suppono*-*supponere*-*suppositum* (place under). This is called *assimilation*. Sometimes there is only a partial assimilation of sounds: e.g., *n* before *p* becomes *m*, as in *compose*.

2. Sometimes the Latin prefixes *cum* and *per* (as well as the Greek *δί-α*) serve merely to intensify the word to which they are affixed: e.g., *per* + *facio* > *perficio*-*perficere*-*perfectum* = do thoroughly, finish; or *cum* + *cedo* > *concede*-*concedere*-*concessum* = yield completely, give way.

3. The prefix *co-* is most often used as a learned borrowing, meaning “together” or “jointly”: e.g., *coworker*.

4. When the Latin word has first passed through French, *contra* most often becomes *counter*: e.g., *contra* + *mando* (order) > *countermand*.

<i>Latin Preposition</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
sine	without	se-	secure, secluded
sub	under, in addition to	sub-, suc-, suff-, sug-, sup-, sus-	submit, success, suffer suggest, suppose, suspend
super ⁵	above	super-	supervise
trans	across	trans-, tra-	transmit, tradition
ultra ⁶	beyond	ultra-	ultrasonic



Phoenix mosaic. The phoenix was a mythical bird that was said to live for 500 years, then consume itself in fire, only to be reborn out of the ashes. Third century CE (Urfa, Turkey)

5. When the Latin word has first passed through French, *super* most often becomes *sur*: e.g., *super + vivo* (live) > *survive*.

6. *Ultra* is never used as a prefix in Latin. It appears in English only as a learned borrowing.

II. GREEK PREPOSITIONS

<i>Greek Preposition</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
amphi (ἀμφί)	around, on both sides; of both kinds	amphi-	amphitheatre amphibious
ana (ἀνά)	up; backward; again	ana-	anagram, analogy
anti (ἀντί)	against	anti-	antidote, antipathy
apo (ἀπό)	from, away from	apo-, aph-*	apology, apostle, aphorism
cata (κατά)	down, away; concerning	cata-, cath-*	catalog, catastrophe, catholic, catheter
dia (διά)	through	dia-	diameter
en (ἐν)	in	en-, em-	endemic, empathy
ec (ἐκ)	out of	ec-, ex-	ecstasy, exodus
epi (ἐπί)	on, at, to; in addition to	epi-, eph-*	epistle, epidemic ephemeral
hyper ⁷ (ὑπέρ)	over, beyond; excessively	hyper-	hyperbole, hyperactive
hypo (ὑπό)	under, below; slightly	hypo-, hyph-*	hypothesis, hyphen
meta (μετά)	with, after, beyond; change	meta-, meth-*	metabolism, method
para (παρά)	beside, beyond; contrary to; irregular	para-	paradox, parallel, paranoia
peri (περί)	around, about, near	peri-	perimeter, periphery
pro (πρό)	before, in front of	pro-	problem, prophet
pros (πρός)	to, toward, in addition to	pros-	prosthesis
syn ⁸ (σύν)	with, together	syn-, sym-, syl-, sym-, sys-	synthesis, sympathy, syllable, symphony, system

* When placed before a word that begins with a rough breathing mark, the final vowel is dropped, and π changes to a φ, and a τ changes to a θ.

7. Almost all uses of *hyper-* and *hypo-* in English compounds are learned borrowings.

8. In compounds, the *n* of *syn-* is often assimilated to the consonant that follows it.

III. PREFIXES DERIVED FROM GREEK AND LATIN ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

Most English compound words formed from the following Greek and Latin adjectives and adverbs are learned borrowings.

Words of Measurement

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
acron (ἄκρον)	topmost	acro-	acropolis
aequum, aequi	equal	equi-	equilateral
auto (αὐτό)	self	auto-	autograph
homeon (ὁμοῖον)	similar	homeo-	homeopathic
homon (ὁμόν)	same	homo-	homogenize
ison (ἴσον)	equal	iso-	isosceles
macron (μακρόν)	large, long, excessive	macro-	macrocosm
magnum, magni	large	magni-	magnify
mega (μέγα)	large, great	mega-	megaphone
megalon (μεγάλον)	large, great	megalo-	megalomania
micron (μικρόν)	small	micro-	microphone
multum, multi	much, many	multi-	multiply
omne, omnis	all	omni-	omnivore
pan (πᾶν)	all	pan-, panto-	pantheon, pantomime
poly (πολύ)	much, many	poly-	polygamy
tele (τῆλε)	at a distance, far	tele-	telephone

Words of Praise

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
bene	well	bene-	benefactor
eu (εὖ)	well	eu-	eulogy
orthon (ὀρθόν)	straight, right	ortho-	orthodox
philia (φιλία)	love	phil-, philo-	philanthropy, philosophy
rectum, recti	straight, right	recti-	rectify

Negatives

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
a- ⁹ (ἀ-)	not, lack of, absence	a-	abyss
in- ¹⁰	not	in-, il-, im-	innocuous illegal, immoral
non	not	non-	nonresistant
dis-	apart, away, reverse	dis-	disappear, dismiss
malum, mali	bad	mal-, male-	malefactor
cacon (κακόν)	bad	caco-	cacophony
dys- (δυσ-)	bad, difficult	dys-	dyslexia
miseo (μισέω)	hate	miso-	misogynist
heteron (ἕτερον)	other, different	hetero-	heterogeneous
retro	backward	retro-, re-	retrograde, regress

Odds and Ends

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
archeon (ἀρχαῖον)	old	archeo-	archeology
paleon (παλαιόν)	old	paleo-	paleolithic
neon (νέον)	new	neo-	neophyte
crypton (κρυπτόν)	hidden	crypto-	cryptogram
quasi	as if, resembling	quasi-	quasi-official

9. When *a-* is added to a word that begins with a vowel, an *n* is placed between the prefix and the root of the word: e.g., *a + arche > anarchy*.

10. There is, unfortunately, no way to distinguish between the use of *in-* as a prefix meaning *in* or *on*, and its use as a negative.

No Wonder I'm Confused

Mastering the orthography of English can be a difficult business because of the various influences on the language over time, and the existence of both homographs and homophones only add to the confusion.

Homographs are words that have the same written forms but different meanings (and sometimes different pronunciations). They may or may not have the same etymological root.

1. *orient* is derived from *orior-oriri* = rise
morbid is derived from *morbus, morbi* = sickness
 Check your dictionary for different meanings of these words and how these meanings developed.
2. *Host* can mean either a very large army, or a person who greets and entertains you. The former is derived from *hostis, hostis* = enemy; the latter from *hospes, hospitis* = guest or host.
 Here are a few others to confuse you:
 You are not *qualified*, so I will give you only *qualified* approval.
 I *wind* my watch as I stand in the *wind*.
 I hope that my *will will* reflect my *will*.
 I *wound* my watch although I had a terrible *wound*.

Homophones are words that sound alike but that are spelled differently (and have different meanings).

Examples

1. I *threw* the ball *through* the window.
2. Don't *whine*, he said, as he drank my glass of *wine*.
3. She *knows* where her *nose* is.

Impress Your Friends

Some words are just fun to know. Here are a couple:

obfuscate = confuse or bewilder, especially in regard to the truth.

"The governor tends to obfuscate even when asked a direct question."

obsequious = overly willing to follow the will or desire of another, especially one's superiors.

"His obsequious behavior toward his boss made everyone think he was her servant."



7: EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. In Exercises 1–29, fill in the blanks with the literal meaning of each italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct. If you are not sure of the derivation, check your dictionary.

Example

A promotion moves you in front; a demotion moves you down.

1. At a *colloquium*, individuals _____ one another.
2. An *extraterrestrial* being come from _____ the earth.
3. *Circumstances* are the events that _____ an event.
4. Your *supervisor* is _____ your work.
5. An *introvert* is an individual who has _____ himself.
6. A *supposition* is a statement that is _____ an argument.

Can you figure out a Greek-based word that has exactly the same meaning? _____

7. In American history, “*ante bellum*” usually refers to the period _____ the Civil War.
8. To *intervene* in an argument is to _____ the two sides.
9. If someone grabs you _____ the throat, you may *suffocate*.
10. An *agenda* is a list of things to be _____.
11. A person who *interferes* in your business _____ himself _____.
12. When the *onus* of responsibility is placed upon you, it becomes your _____.
13. A *sinecure* is a job _____ real responsibilities or duties.
14. An *obstacle* _____ you.

15. An *aqueduct* _____ water from one place to another.
16. A person who lives in seclusion is closed _____ from the world.
17. A *circumlocution* is a polite way of _____ an unpleasant topic.
18. *Contrary* individuals are inclined to go _____ whatever the majority says.
19. A *postscript* is _____ the body of a letter.
20. A *permeable* substance allows other material to pass _____ it.
21. A *permanent* stain is one that will remain _____.
22. An *advertisement* _____ your attention _____ a product.
23. A *deposition* is a statement that has been _____ about an event.
24. What does *circa* 1920 mean? _____
25. I came to work *via* public *transportation*. In other words I was _____ town _____ city streets.
26. An *aggressive* person walks _____ you in a hostile manner.
27. I was given a *bonus* because I did _____ job.
28. He lived in *squalor*; his apartment was so _____ I couldn't stand it.
29. He claimed he was a *pauper*, but he certainly didn't live like a _____ man.

B. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct.

30. An *amphitheatre* has seats all _____.
31. An *apostate* is an individual who has _____ his faith.
32. A *peripatetic* individual likes to walk _____ all the time.
33. When you make a *synthesis* of various ideas, you _____ them _____.

34. An *antidote* is _____ a poison.
35. A *diagonal* line is drawn _____ an angle.
36. An *epitaph* is written _____ a tombstone.
37. *Metamorphosis* indicates _____ of shape or form.
38. A *paramedic* works _____ the doctor.
39. A *hypercritical* individual is _____ judgmental.
40. In a state of *ecstasy*, you may experience a psychological sensation of _____ your body.
41. A disease that is *endemic* is widespread _____ the population.
42. A *prophet* speaks the true outcome of an event _____ it happens.
43. There was an *exodus* toward the doors as the audience looked for a way _____.
44. In a *symphony*, all the sounds blend _____.

C. As we have already seen, some Latin words changed their function when they entered into English. Here are some more Latin verb forms that have become English nouns. What are the current meanings of these Latin verbs?

<i>Latin Verb Form</i>	<i>Literal Translation</i>	<i>Current Meaning</i>
45. <i>credo</i>	I believe	_____
46. <i>affidavit</i>	he has sworn	_____
47. <i>deficit</i>	it is lacking	_____
48. <i>ignoramus</i>	we do not know	_____
49. <i>caveat</i>	let him beware	_____
50. <i>caret</i>	it is lacking	_____
51. <i>fiat</i>	let it be done	_____

D. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct.

52. An *omnivorous* animal _____ kinds of food.
53. If you are a *neophyte* at tennis, you may make mistakes because you are _____ to the sport.
54. A creature that is *macrocephalic* has a _____ skull.
55. A *misogamist* _____ the very thought of marriage.
56. The population of New York City may be described as *heterogeneous* because it is made up of many _____ nationalities and ethnic groups.
57. A *benevolent* individual wishes you _____.
58. A *dyspeptic* individual may be irritable because she has _____ digestion.
59. A *polygynist* has _____ wives at the same time.
60. The *Pantheon* was an ancient temple in Rome dedicated to _____ the _____.
61. To be *magnanimous* means that you are generous and therefore have a _____ spirit.
62. If you are *abysmally* ignorant, your lack of knowledge is _____ any measure or depth.
63. A *retrospective* exhibit looks _____ at the whole of an artist's work.
64. A musical composition that is *euphonious* _____ to the ear.
65. A *micrometer* is an _____ distances.
66. An *Anglophile* _____ all things English.
67. An *autonomous* state is one that is _____.
68. A *cryptogram* is _____ whose meaning is _____.
69. An *archaeologist* _____ cultures.
70. A *rectilinear* argument moves along a _____ line.
71. The speech of an *incoherent* individual does _____ hold together.
72. "Please do not *desert* me in the *desert*" provides an example of a _____.

73. "He jumped into the *air* when he found out that he was *heir* to a fortune" provides an example of a _____.
74. What is the difference between an *immigrant* and an *emigrant*? _____.

E. What's in a name? *Onyma* (ὄνυμα) is the Greek word for name. Give the current meaning of each of the following compounds of *onyma* and cite an example of each.

	Meaning	Example
75. acronym	_____	_____
76. homonym	_____	_____
77. antonym	_____	_____
78. synonym	_____	_____
79. anonymous	_____	_____
80. eponym	_____	_____

F. How many of these words can you use to construct a coherent essay or story? Whatever you write must make grammatical and logical sense. If you are unsure of a meaning, check your dictionary. In addition, give the etymology of each of the words that you use.

abhor	deviate	pervert
accost	emancipate	post mortem
adhere	exacerbate	prevaricate
antediluvian	extrovert	pro tempore
avert	internecine	seduce
collude	introspective	superstitious
compassion	oblivious	traitor

G. Construct sentences that contain one of the following words and that demonstrate you understand the meaning of the word. You need use only one word per sentence but extra credit for using two or more. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct.

anachronism

empirical

hypothesis

antithesis

ephemeral

paradigm

catastrophe

hyperbole

protagonist

LATIN *and* GREEK NUMBERS



The Tomb of the Diver. Fifth-century BCE wall painting (Paestum, Italy)

Ten is the very nature of number. The Greeks and all barbarians alike count up to ten, and having reached ten, revert again to the single unit.

AETIUS (first-century CE Greek philosopher)

COUNTDOWN

The similarities among the words for the numbers one through ten were one of the first clues that led scholars of comparative and historical linguistics to posit a common ancestry for what is now called the Indo-European family of languages.

numerus, numeri = number
arithmos (ἀριθμός) = number

<i>Let Me Count the Ways (in Indo-European) . . .</i>			
	<i>One</i>	<i>Two</i>	<i>Three</i>
<i>Sanskrit</i>	ekas	dvau	trayah
<i>Persian</i>	yek	do	se
<i>Gaelic</i>	aon	dhà	trì
<i>Albanian</i>	një	dy	tre
<i>Pashto</i>	yaw	dwa	dre
<i>German</i>	ein	zwei	drei
<i>Russian</i>	odin	dva	tri

LATIN NUMBERS

<i>Cardinal Numbers</i>	<i>Roman Numerals</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
1. unum	I	uni-	uniform
2. duo	II	duo- or du-	duet
3. tres	III	tri-	triangle
4. quattuor	IV	quadri-	quadrilateral
5. quinque	V	quinqu-	quinquennial
6. sex	VI	sexi- or sex-	sextet
7. septem	VII	sept-	September
8. octo	VIII	oct- or octa-	octet
9. novem	IX	novem- or noven-	November
10. decem	X	decem- or deca-	December
100. centum	C	centi- or cent-	centigrade
1,000. mille	M	milli- or mill-	millennium

How Long Did You Say I Have to Wait Here?

In the seventeenth century, when an outbreak of bubonic plague spread across Europe bringing death and devastation, the rulers of Venice ruled that ships arriving from plague-infested places had to wait for forty days before passengers could disembark, in order to insure that no one on the boat was infected with the disease. The Italian *Quarantina giorni* (forty days) is derived from *quadraginta*, the Latin word for forty. What is the current meaning of the English word *quarantine*?

Examples of Roman Numerals

XI = 11	XIX = 19	XX = 20
XXV = 25	XXXVI = 36	LIII = 53
LXIV = 64	XCIV = 94	CLXXIX = 179
CCX = 210	CCCXLVII = 347	CDXVII = 418
DLXVII = 567	MDCCCLXXXV = 1885	MCMLXXXIV = 1984

It's Nothing

Although they certainly understood the quality of “nothingness,” neither the Greeks nor the Romans had a symbol that indicated zero, or the absence of quantity. The arithmetic representation of zero was devised by Hindu mathematicians and given an Arabic name (*sifr* = emptiness) by medieval Muslim scientists. The word passed into English in two forms: *cipher* and *zero*.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
nihil	nothing
nullum, nullius	no, none

Latin Ordinal Numbers

<i>Ordinal Numbers</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Example</i>
primum	first	primary
secundum	second	second
tertium	third	tertiary
quartum	fourth	quart
quintum	fifth	quintet
sextum	sixth	sextuple
septimum	seventh	septimal
octavum	eighth	octave
nonum	ninth	nonagenarian
decimum	tenth	decimal

We the People

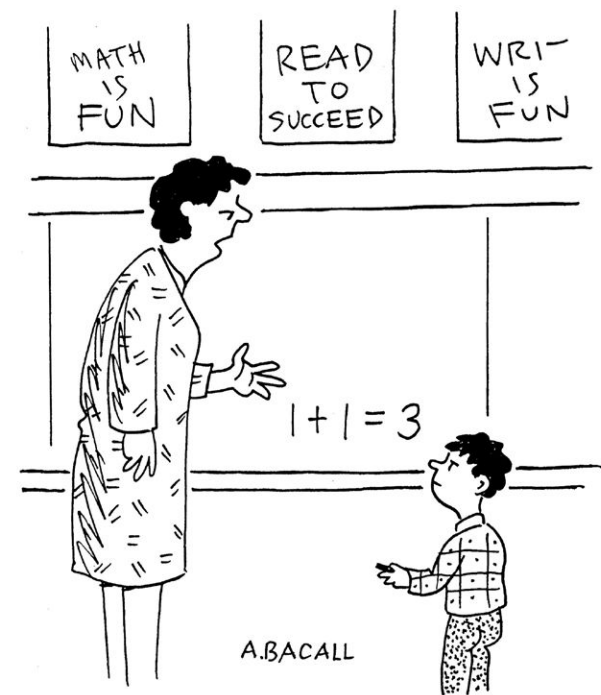
In 1782, at the end of the American Revolutionary War, *e pluribus unum* was adopted as the official motto of the United States and inscribed on the Great Seal. You can find its image on all American paper currency.

E pluribus unum = out of many, one

Latin Numerical Adverbs and Adjectives

Numerical Adverbs

<i>and Adjectives</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
solum, solius	single, alone	solī-	solitary
sesqui	one and a half	sesqui-	sesquicentennial
bis	twice	bi-	biennial
semi- ¹	half	semi-	semiannual
ambo	both	ambi-	ambidextrous



“Take my word for it. The answer is two. I’m a college graduate.” (www.cartoonstock.com)

1. Semi- is used only as a prefix in Latin; in English usage it can mean half, as in *semiannual* (twice a year), but it often has the meaning of “somewhat” or “partially,” e.g., *semiconscious*.

GREEK NUMBERS

<i>Cardinal Numbers</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
1. hen (ἓν)	heno-	henotheist
monon (μόνον)	mono-	monogram
2. dyo (δύο)	dyo- or dy-	dyad
3. tris (τρεῖς)	tri-	trigonometry
4. tessara or tettara (τέσσαρα, τέτταρα)	tetra-	tetrahedron
5. pente (πέντε)	pent- or penta-	pentathlon
6. hex (ἕξ)	hexa-	hexameter
7. hepta (ἑπτά)	hepta-	heptagon
8. octo (ὀκτώ)	octo- or octa-	octopus
9. ennea (ἐννέα)	ennea-	ennead
10. deca (δέκα)	deca-	decatalogue
100. hecaton (ἑκατόν)	hecto- ²	hectogram
1,000. chilioi (χίλιοι)	chilo- or kilo-	chiliastic, kilogram

Greek Ordinal Numbers

<i>Ordinal Numbers</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
proton (πρῶτον)	first	proto-	prototype
deuteron (δεύτερον)	second	deutero-	Deuteronomy

Other Greek ordinal numbers are rarely used in English compounds.

Greek Numerical Adverbs

<i>Numerical Adverbs</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
dis (δίς)	twice	di-	dilemma
hemi (ἡμι-)	half	hemi-	hemisphere

2. Used in English only as a learned borrowing.

The Years Fly By . . .

If we wish to note an anniversary, we can use the Latin numerical prefix with the combining form of the Latin noun for year.

annus, anni (year) > -ennial
e.g., centum + annus = centennial

It's Over

He asked for a finite number of ideas, but his speech went on to infinity.
finio-finire-finitum = limit, fix; close

So Stop Wasting Time

The Romans called the point at which three roads met a *trivium*, a term that was also used to describe a public street. Perhaps because it was out in the open and therefore common, or perhaps because people would just hang out there, not talking about anything important, the topics of discussion could be described as *trivial* (via, viae = road).

Or Perhaps I Can't Count That High

The largest number in Greek expressed in a single word is *myrias*, *myriados* (μυριάς), which represents the number 10,000. But it also meant infinite, or countless, which is the meaning we give *myriad* in current English usage.

It's More Than Enough

Although the word *plethora* (πληθώρα) originally meant fullness, it now means an overabundance.

It's Too Much

The word *googol* was coined by the nine-year-old nephew of the twentieth-century mathematician Edward Kasner, who defined it for him as “1 followed by a hundred zeros.” It seems like an appropriate word for a nonsensical number. The search engine Google is a play on the word, since it claims to offer access to an uncountable amount of knowledge.

How Much Is Two and Ten?

As we have already seen, the Roman numeral XII represents the number 12, or ten plus two. The word in Latin for twelve is just that: *duo* plus *decem*, or *duodecim*. The word passed into French and eventually appeared as *douzaine*. How do you think that happened?



A fallen warrior, *The Dying Gaul*.
Third century BCE (Museo Capitolino, Rome)

Don't Be a Show-Off!

Some people are afflicted with sesquipedalianism. They love using words that are one-and-a-half feet long, taking delight in showing off and confusing you.

Here We Go Again . . .

A palindrome is a word or a sequence of words that reads, letter for letter, the same backward as forward. "Was it a cat I saw?"

παλίνδρομος = running back again



8 : EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. Arrange the following words in numerical order as indicated by their Latin or Greek roots. What is the meaning of each word? Consult your unabridged dictionary if you are unsure of the meaning or etymology or any word listed.

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Ranking</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
1. trimester	_____	_____
2. octagon	_____	_____
3. quintuplet	_____	_____
4. primary	_____	_____
5. duality	_____	_____
6. September	_____	_____
7. millennium	_____	_____
8. percentage	_____	_____
9. semester	_____	_____
10. noon	_____	_____
11. unicycle	_____	_____
12. hemisphere	_____	_____
13. square	_____	_____
14. decimal	_____	_____
15. century	_____	_____
16. bigamy	_____	_____
17. hemidemisemiquaver	_____	_____

B. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct.

Example

To *unify* a people is to make them into one.

A *deuterogamist* has married for the second time.

18. *Primates* are ranked _____ in the order of living beings.
19. A *trilogy* is a literary work composed of _____ parts.
20. A *quatrain* is a verse of poetry that has _____ lines.
21. A *sextet* has _____ members.
22. When will the *tricentennial* celebration of American independence take place? _____
23. *Protoplasm* is regarded as the _____ form of living matter.
24. When a chorus sings in *unison*, it sings with _____ voice.
25. The *Pentagon* is a _____-angled building.
26. A *monotheist* believes in _____ god.
27. In exactly two *decades*, what year will it be? _____ Write the answer in Roman numerals.

28. If you are a *sextuplet*, how many siblings of your age do you have? _____
29. If a judge declares a contract *null and void*, what does this ruling mean? _____

30. What is the difference in meaning between *ambivalent* and *ambiguous*? _____
31. What is the difference between a *kilometer* and a *millimeter*? _____

32. When an atomic bomb *annihilated* Hiroshima, Japan, in 1945, it reduced it _____

33. A *semiannual* event takes place _____.

34. A *bicameral* legislature has _____ chambers of lawmakers.
35. A *duplicious* individual is deceiving and tricky. What is the root of this word, and how do you think it took on its current meaning? _____
36. Some people enjoy *solitude*, but I don't like being _____.
37. What is the meaning of *cipher* in mathematics? _____
What is its meaning when describing a person? _____
38. What is the present meaning of *plethora*? _____ Use it in a sentence. _____

C. What are the French, Spanish, and Italian words for the numbers given below?

English	French	Spanish	Italian
39. one	_____	_____	_____
40. two	_____	_____	_____
41. three	_____	_____	_____
42. four	_____	_____	_____
43. five	_____	_____	_____
44. six	_____	_____	_____
45. seven	_____	_____	_____
46. eight	_____	_____	_____
47. nine	_____	_____	_____
48. ten	_____	_____	_____
49. hundred	_____	_____	_____
50. thousand	_____	_____	_____

GOVERNMENT *and* POLITICS



A philosopher. Fourth century BCE (Delphi Museum)

Man is a political animal—that is, it is the nature of man to live in the city.

ARISTOTLE (fourth-century BCE Greek philosopher), *Politics* 1.2

GREEK POLITICS

Many modern theories and forms of government (or at least the words we use to describe them) have their origins in the Greek and Roman political systems. Indeed, the Greeks had a name for every kind of polity; and at one time or another, they seem to have experimented with all of them: monarchy, oligarchy, tyranny, democracy—all these words have etymological roots in Greek political thought.

Ancient Greece was divided into independent city-states, all of which had their own constitutions, laws, and religious institutions. Each state (*polis*) fiercely guarded its autonomy, and every individual took his identity from his place of citizenship and its political, social, and religious ways of life.

Although there were perhaps hundreds of these independent states in Greece, the two that dominated Greek political life in the sixth and fifth centuries BCE were Athens and Sparta. The two cities had radically different views of the meaning of law and power that determined the structure of their political institutions. Sparta held tenaciously to a way of life shaped by a conservative oligarchic form of government and by compulsory military training that began at age seven. Athens, on the other hand, created, over the course of the fifth century BCE, a radical democracy whose governing Council eventually had 500 members, all selected by lot, who served terms of one year. It is perhaps no surprise, then, that eventually, in 431 BCE, they went to war against each other. Although Sparta was eventually the military victor after nearly thirty years of intermittent warfare, both states, as well as their allies, were weakened by the conflict and neither ever recovered completely. In the fourth century BCE, Philip of Macedon, father of Alexander the Great, brought almost all the *poleis* under his domination, and although nominally they were free, in reality the Greek cities lost their political autonomy. And eventually, in 146 BCE, after Alexander's successors had been overcome by the growing military power of Rome, Greece became yet another Roman province.

Greek Political Vocabulary

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
polis (πόλις), pl. poleis (πόλεις)	city, city-state
demos (δῆμος)	the people
despotes (δεσπότης)	master, lord
oligoi (ὀλίγοι)	few
tyrannos (τύραννος)	absolute ruler
-cracy	see Greek suffixes, chapter 6
-archy	see Greek suffixes, chapter 6

Politics, as Usual

Ostracism, which now means general exclusion from society or from a particular group, was originally a form of political banishment in ancient Athens. It was so named because the punishment was voted upon by writing a person's name on a piece of tile (ὄστρακον) and depositing it into jars marked "yes" or "no." In his life of Aristides, a fifth-century BCE Athenian statesman and military leader who is famously portrayed as a man of moral integrity, the Greek biographer Plutarch reports that when, due to a struggle for power in Athens, a vote was being taken on whether or not to exile Aristides, "an illiterate countryman, not recognizing him, handed his *ostrakon* to Aristides and asked him to write 'Aristides.' Aristides, amazed, asked what wrong had Aristides ever done him. 'Nothing at all,' he said, 'I don't even know him, but I am thoroughly annoyed at hearing him called "the Just."' When Aristides heard this, he did not respond, but he wrote his name on the *ostrakon* and handed it back."

ostrakon (ὄστρακον) = tile; potsherd

ROMAN POLITICS

According to tradition, after the founding of the city by Romulus in 753 BCE, the first form of Roman government was monarchy; but after a revolution and the expulsion of the kings in 509 BCE, a republic was established that lasted until the end of the first century BCE. At that time, in the midst of deteriorating political and social conditions, an imperial form of government began to take root, although republican institutions, such as the Senate and the consulship, survived for many centuries. Of course, the emperor always kept his eye on political matters, and often his hand in the state treasury.

Roman republican and imperial structures have given their names to many parts of the American system of government. For example, the United States Senate takes its name from the Roman *Senatus*, which originally meant a group of old men, whereas Congress derives its name from a Latin verb that means "to walk together." And finally, the laws of this country "stand together" in the Constitution.

Roman Political Vocabulary

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
civis, civis > civitas, civitatis	citizen state
congregior-congredi-congressus cf. gradior-gradī-gressum	walk together, meet with one another walk
imperium, imperiī cf. impero-imperare-imperatum and imperator, imperatoris	power, command; empire command, order emperor
nomino-nominare-nominatum cf. nomen, nominis	name name (noun)
populus, populi	people
princeps, principis	chief, leader. What are the Latin roots of this word?
res publica <i>publicus</i> is actually a contraction of <i>populicus</i> (cf. <i>populus</i>)	public matter, republic
rex, regis cf. rego-regere-rectum	king rule
senex, senis	old man
statuo-statuerē-statutum in compounds, -stituo-stitutum, cf. sto-stare-statum	cause to stand, set up
urbs, urbis	city
volvo-volvere-volutum	turn

Nothing Works

Finally, I came to the conclusion that the condition of all existing states is bad—nothing can cure their constitutions, but a miraculous reform assisted by good luck—and I was driven to assert, in praise of true philosophy, that nothing else can enable one to see what is right for states and for individuals, and that the troubles of mankind will never cease until either true and genuine philosophers attain political power or the rulers of states by some dispensation of providence become genuine philosophers.

PLATO (fourth-century BCE Greek philosopher), *Seventh Letter*

GOVERNMENTAL BUREAUCRACY

The Roman state was highly organized not only politically, but economically and socially as well; and over time, the number of administrative offices grew larger and larger. Are you surprised?

Just a Few Roman Political Offices

consul, consulis = consul, the highest magistrate in the Republic. Two were elected each year.

cf. *consulo-consulere-consultum* = consider, deliberate
and *consilium, consilii* = deliberation, advice

censor, censoris = censor, the magistrate in charge of prosecuting crimes involving moral and political offenses, as well as being responsible for the assessment of taxes and the raising of revenues for public works.

cf. *censeo-censere-censum* = tax, assess

tribunus, tribuni = tribune, the magistrate charged with rights and interests of the plebeian class.

dictator, dictatoris = dictator. In times of extreme public danger, a dictator might be appointed with supreme power by the Senate for a maximum period of six months.

cf. *dico-dicere-dictum* = say, speak, declare

pontifex maximus = the high priest, who was the head of all the official clergy and presided over the religious affairs of the state.

pontifex, pontificis = priest

maximus, maximi = greatest

The word *pontifex* actually means “bridge maker” (*pons, pontis* = bridge). The origin of the term is unclear, but some scholars believe that it originally was an individual skilled in the magic of bridge making; others argue that his function was to build a “bridge” between the human and the divine world.

Purity in Politics . . .

The English word *candidate* derives from the fact that when a Roman ran for political office, he would wear a distinctive white toga (*toga candida*) while campaigning in the Forum.

cf. *candeo*-*candere* = glow, shine; be clear

But Not All That Pure . . .

The Forum was the public square and center of Roman civic and religious life, but it was also the place where politicians campaigned, debated, legislated, judged, and incessantly plotted against one another. It was there, on the Ides of March, 44 BCE, that the Roman general and dictator, Julius Caesar, was assassinated, the victim of a conspiracy of Roman senators and his supposed friend and ally, Brutus. It is no wonder that in Shakespeare’s play *Julius Caesar* a fortune-teller warned him, “Beware the Ides of March.” His dying words, *Et tu, Brute* (“Even you, Brutus”), have come to mean an act of betrayal.

Only if the Signs Are Right

Perhaps our political system would operate even more efficiently if we followed the Roman method of making public decisions only when what they regarded as divine signs were favorable. The interpreter of these omens, which included the flight of birds, was called the *augur*; and it was he who decided whether the *auspicia* allowed the Senate to act, a military leader to make an expedition, or a successful candidate to be installed, or inaugurated, into office.

Vocabulary

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
omen, ominis	sign, omen
augur, auguris	diviner, prophet
auspes, auspiciis	interpreter of events through the flight of birds
cf. <i>specio</i> - <i>specere</i> - <i>spectum</i>	look at
inauguro-inaugurare-inauguratum	take omens; consecrate, dedicate

Whose Side Are You On?

A flight of birds that appeared on the right side was taken as a good omen, but one that appeared on the left was a portent of serious trouble ahead.

dexter, dexteri = on the right; skillful; favorable

sinister, sinistri = on the left; awkward; unfavorable



Hadrian's villa at Tivoli, Italy. The Roman emperor Hadrian ruled 117–138 CE.

United We Stand . . .

The seal of the Roman government that appeared on all public documents and that was inscribed on coins, monuments, and the standards of the Roman army was the acronym SPQR, which stood for “Senatus Populusque Romanus.” The twentieth-century fascist dictator of Italy, Benito Mussolini, whose stated aim was to restore Rome to its former imperial greatness, ordered that SPQR be made visible everywhere in Rome. The result was that if you visit the city now, you will find this acronym engraved on manhole covers.

Divided We Fall

The names of the three social classes of Roman society also have become part of our political vocabulary. Originally, these divisions seem to have been determined by birth; but in later times, membership in a particular class was often based on wealth.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
patricius, patricii cf. pater, patris	patrician, a member of the Roman nobility father
optimas, optimates (pl.)	the best, or most noble; those of high social standing
eques, equites cf. equus, equi	horseman, knight horse
plebs, plebis	the common people. The history of the Republic was marked by the struggle of the plebs for political and economic rights.
servus, servi	slave

We, the People

The *proletariat* consists of those who labor for wages, making their contribution to the state not through the ownership of property, but by the production of children for the labor force.

proles, prolis = offspring

Theories of Social and Economic Organization with Classical Roots

All of the following terms that describe modern social and economic systems were coined or developed their present meanings in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. What is the meaning of the suffix *-ism* in each of the following terms?

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Latin Root</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
capitalism	caput, capitis	head
communism	communis, communis	common
socialism	socius, socii	ally, companion
fascism	fascis, fascis	stick

The *fascis* (plural) was a bundle of sticks, bound together, that was carried in front of the chief Roman magistrates, as a symbol both of their power and of the unity of the Roman people.

THE LAW

One of the greatest and most lasting contributions of ancient Roman civilization to the development of European thought is the vast body of laws and institutions that form the basis of much of modern jurisprudence. This influence can be seen not only in the structure of many European law codes, but also in the very language of the modern legal system.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
codex, codicis	book
crimen, criminis	accusation; the act of which one is accused
judex, judicis	judge
jus, juris	right, law, justice
lex, legis	law

Latin Legal Terminology Used in Modern Law¹

<i>Latin Phrase</i>	<i>Latin Meaning</i>	<i>Modern Judicial Usage</i>
<i>alias</i>	at another time	an assumed name
<i>alibi</i>	elsewhere, in another place	a defense by which the person accused, in order to prove that he could not have committed the crime with which he is charged, offers evidence to show that he was in another place at the time
<i>bona fide</i>	in good faith	without deceit or fraud
<i>caveat emptor</i>	let the buyer beware	the purchaser assumes the risk that goods might be defective or unsuitable to his or her needs
<i>de facto</i>	by fact	a state of affairs that exists actually and must be accepted for all practical purposes, but which is illegal or illegitimate.
<i>de jure</i>	by law	legitimate, lawful
<i>habeas corpus</i>	have the body	a court order that commands an individual or government official to produce the prisoner at a designated time and place so that the court can determine the legality of custody.
<i>nolo contendere</i>	I do not wish to contest	a plea that has the same effect as a plea of guilty, as far as the criminal sentence is concerned, but may not be considered as an admission of guilt for any other purpose
<i>prima facie</i>	at first appearance	a lawsuit or criminal prosecution in which the evidence before trial is sufficient to prove the case unless there is substantial contradictory evidence
<i>pro bono publico</i>	for the public good	legal work undertaken for the public good, without charge, especially for a client without sufficient financial resources

1. All definitions are taken from *Black's Law Dictionary* (thelawdictionary.org).

Who’s Giving Advice Here?

A *council* and a *counsel* both give advice, but they have different Latin roots. Check your unabridged dictionary for their etymologies and differences in meaning.

WAR AND PEACE

The Roman legal system spread wherever the Roman armies conquered because victory meant the imposition of Roman customs and practices, including, of course, the rule of Roman law. In addition, many veterans, after completing their tours of duty, would settle in the regions where they had been stationed, thus further strengthening Roman control and cultural influence.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
auxilium, auxilii	help, aid; troops
bellum, belli	war
miles, militis	soldier
pax, pacis	peace
periculum, periculi	danger
cf. experior-experiri-expertum	try, attempt; risk
polemos (πόλεμος)	war
vinco-vincere-victum	conquer

Who’s in Charge Here?

Some officers took their titles from the number of men they commanded. How many were overseen by a *decanus*? How many by a *centurio*?



9 : EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. In the following sentences, answer each question, or fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning, check your unabridged dictionary.

1. What is a *plebiscite*? _____ Who participates in it? _____
2. What is the science of *demography*? _____
3. What was the original purpose of a *census*? _____
4. To whom should *regalia* properly belong? _____ What is its current meaning? _____

5. When I followed the sign that said, "this way to the *egress*," where did I end up? _____
6. The Roman statesman Cicero wrote a work entitled *de Senectute*. What was it about?

7. If a person *pontificates*, he speaks in the manner of a _____. What is the current usage of this word? _____
8. He said he was *invincible*, but I knew that he could be easily _____.
9. What happens when *tyrannicide* is committed? _____
10. A *patrimony* is an inheritance from one's _____.
11. The *imperative* form of a verb indicates a _____.
12. *Civility* is the kind of behavior expected of a _____. What is the current usage of this word? _____
13. He wanted to become an *equestrian*, but he was terrified of _____.
14. What is the current meaning of *provincial*? _____
15. A person who behaves in a *servile* manner acts like a _____.

16. The function of a *legislature* is to _____ the _____.
17. An *aristocrat* believes in _____. What is the current usage of this word? _____
18. A *retrograde* motion is one that _____.
19. Many newspapers claim to be the *vox populi*. What does that mean? _____
20. A *demagogue* is able to _____ by arousing their emotions.
21. He crashed into a parked car on the day of his driving test. It was not a good sign of what was to come; in fact, you might call it _____.
22. He tried to convince me with his arguments, but I was not about to be _____.
23. When he told me that the signs of success were *auspicious*, what did he mean? _____
24. What is the literal meaning of *metropolis*? _____ What is its current usage? _____
25. What is the literal meaning of *plebeian*? _____ What is its pejorative meaning? _____
26. The *nominal* head of a committee is chairperson in _____ only.
27. If a person speaks with *candor*, he makes his feelings _____.
28. What is the literal meaning of *prolific*? _____? What is its current usage? _____
29. The enemy's *bellicose* statements made the people fear that _____ was approaching.
30. *Auxiliary* policemen are _____ agents trained to _____ the regular force.
31. His *polemical* attack made me feel that he was making _____ against me.
32. The *militant* behavior of the protestors made them seem like _____.
33. When the Spanish explorer Balboa saw the *Pacific* Ocean for the first time, he gave it this name because he thought it was _____.
34. Both the Latin word *sinister* and the French word *gauche* have taken on pejorative meanings. What were their original meanings, and what does each mean now? _____

35. In ancient Rome, the *patricians* were regarded as the _____ of the country. What is the current usage of the word? _____
36. What is the difference in meaning between *belligerent* and *bellicose*? _____

37. I thought he was my friend, but when he _____ me, I sneered, “*et tu, Brute.*”
38. Although in ancient Greek, the word *despot* meant merely master or lord, it has taken on a pejorative meaning in modern English usage. Why do you think this might have happened? _____

B. Many legal terms are used in nonjudicial settings. Can you figure out which Latin legal word or phrase applies in the following situations?

39. I had to prove I was somewhere else when the crime was committed. What I needed was a good _____.
40. When you go to a used car dealer, you really have to be careful about buying anything. It's always a matter of _____.
41. Although he denied that he had eaten the blueberry pie, the purple stains on his shirt established a very good _____ case against him.
42. Although the Supreme Court outlawed segregated schools _____, they can still exist in some areas _____.
43. The application for the job was very long and detailed, but my friend assured me that the place hired everyone, and therefore the process was just _____.
44. He used so many different names at different times that he couldn't remember which was his own name and which was an _____.
45. A person accused of *infidelity* is _____.
46. When a dispute is *adjudicated*, it is decided by turning it over _____.
47. What is the difference in meaning between *incriminate* and *recriminate*? _____

C. Many Latin-based words in English have undergone many changes in spelling because they first passed into French. What are the Latin roots of the following words and what are their current usages? Use your dictionary to make sure you have the correct etymology.

English Word	Latin Root	Current English Meaning
48. loyal	_____	_____
49. fiancé	_____	_____
50. chapter	_____	_____
51. assault	_____	_____
52. ancestor	_____	_____
53. surveillance	_____	_____
54. flour	_____	_____

What's in a Name?

Very often, words can take on meanings that are termed pejorative because they imply some sense of disparagement or scorn. The vocabulary of politics is filled with such words. During the 1980s, for example, the word liberal was used in some circles in a pejorative sense, while to describe someone as plebeian indicates that you think he is common or has poor taste. But American politicians were not the first to use language in this way. The Late Latin word *villanus*, which originally meant a farm laborer, has become our English word *villain*, while the Latin *vulgus* (crowd) is the root of the English word *vulgar*. What social attitudes do such usages reveal?

Latin Word	English Meaning
pejor, pejoris (comparative of malus = bad)	worse
villa, villae	farm house
vulgus, vulgi	the common people, the public; crowd The word <i>mob</i> , meaning an unruly group, is derived from the Latin phrase <i>vulgus mobile</i> (a moving crowd).

PSYCHOLOGY



Oedipus and the Sphinx. Fifth century BCE. (Vatican Museum)

*Why should a man fear where events of chance rule,
and there is clear foreknowledge of nothing?*

It is best to live without plan, however one might.

*Do not fear marriage with your mother,
for many men already have lain with their mothers in dreams.
But these things are nothing to the man who bears life easily.*

SOPHOCLES (fifth-century BCE playwright), *Oedipus Tyrannus*

MODERN THEORIES OF PSYCHOLOGY

The modern study of psychology includes the investigation of human (and animal) behavior in all its forms and manifestations, although most laymen still tend to view it in the context of the psychoanalytic theories of human action and motivation developed by the early twentieth-century thinkers Sigmund Freud, Carl Jung, and their successors. The language of psychology has so permeated our contemporary vocabulary that many of these terms have lost their original, narrowly conceived, and specialized meanings. Like the terminology of all of the modern sciences and technologies, the vocabulary is based primarily on learned borrowings from Greek and Latin.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
psyche (ψυχή)	spirit, soul
as learned borrowing, used as prefix, <i>psycho-</i>	mind
<i>mens, mentis</i> ¹	mind
<i>anima, animae</i>	breath
<i>animus, animi</i>	soul, mind, courage, passion
<i>persona</i>	mask
<i>sanum, sani</i>	healthy, sane

Soul Study

In the earliest usage of the word *psychology* in English (seventeenth century), it meant the study of things concerning the soul.

Who Am I?

According to Sigmund Freud, the human psyche consists of three interactive components:

- the id *It.* The repository of our instinctual drives that are continuously striving for expression
- the ego *I.* That part of the psyche that reacts to and experiences the outside world; our sense of self; consciousness, memory
- the superego *Super* (above) + *ego*. That part of the personality concerned with ethics, and shaped by the moral standard and social ideals of the community

1. *Mens, mentis* survives in the Romance languages as an adverbial ending—e.g., *dolcemente* (Italian), *dulcemente* (Spanish), and *doucement* (French), all of which mean “sweetly,” are derived from the Latin phrase *dulci mente* (“with a sweet mind”).



The god of love, Cupid, and Psyche, the mortal girl whom he saved from death (British Museum)

ANCIENT PSYCHOLOGICAL THEORY

In the classical world, many playwrights, poets, and even historians found their source material in ancient myths that vividly described the often complex psychological dynamics within the structure of the family. The Oedipus complex, as presented by Freud and based on the fifth-century BCE play *Oedipus Tyrannus* by Sophocles, is perhaps the most well known of such conflicts; but Greek myth provides us with many other examples of the consequences of familial passions, examples that still seem to be psychologically valid 2,500 years later.

Thus, the study of classical myth has provided an illumination of the sources of human behavior for modern students of psychology, many of whom see as a primary aim of Greek myths the exposition and resolution of the desires, needs, and conflicts that continue to drive our actions. Several characters from Greek myth, because of their extreme behavior, have given their names to a variety of psychological syndromes. Here are just a few:

narcissism: excessive admiration of one's own physical or mental qualifications. The handsome Narcissus was punished by the gods for his pride and self-absorption. Caused by Nemesis, the goddess of retribution, to fall in love with own reflection in

a pool, he could not bear to tear himself away, and thus faded into nothingness. All that remained was the flower that carries his name.

Electra complex: In psychoanalytic theory, those symptoms are said to be caused by the suppressed sexual desire of a daughter for her father. Electra, daughter of King Agamemnon, conspired with her brother Orestes to murder their mother, Clytemnestra, after Clytemnestra had killed the king.

Oedipus complex: According to Freud, the desire of the child for sexual gratification with the parent of the opposite sex. The child often exhibits an intense dislike of the other parent. Oedipus, as you will recall, unwittingly (perhaps) killed his father and married his mother. But then again, as Jocasta, Oedipus’s mother (and wife), says, “In dreams many a man has slept with his mother.”

Family Member	Latin Word	Greek Word
mother	mater, matris	mater (μήτηρ)
father	pater, patris	pater (πατήρ)
brother	frater, fratris	adelphos (ἄδελφός)
sister	soror, sororis	adelphe (ἄδελφή)
family	familia, familiae or gens, gentis	genos (γένος) or genea (γενεά)
son, daughter ²	filius, filii; filia, filiae	

Be Nice to Your Mother

The Latin expression, *alma mater*, which means nourishing mother, was the phrase used by ancient Romans to describe their country. Today we apply the phrase to the schools we attended because their role is to foster and nourish us intellectually. When you graduate, you can say that, having been nourished by education, you are an *alumnus* (male; plural alumni) or an *alumna* (female; plural alumnae). Both *alma* and *alumnus* (*alumna*) are derived from *alo-alere* = nourish.

LOVE AND MARRIAGE

In Greek myth, marriage often proves to be dangerous, indeed, even fatal: Clytemnestra killed her husband, Agamemnon, upon his return from the Trojan War, although

2. There are no English derivatives from the Greek word for son or daughter.

some argued that it was with good cause. He had sacrificed their daughter Iphigeneia before setting off for Troy, and then brought back a Trojan princess, Cassandra, as part of his booty. Medea had obtained the Golden Fleece for the Greek hero Jason after he promised her marriage, but she murdered their children when Jason divorced her in order to marry another woman.

<i>Marital Relationship</i>	<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Greek Word</i>
marriage	matrimonium, matrimonii	gamos (γάμος)
wife	uxor, uxoris <i>or</i> matrona, matronae	gyne, gynaecos (γυνή) <i>or</i> gamete (γαμετή)
husband	maritus, mariti <i>or</i> vir, viri	aner, andros (άνήρ) <i>or</i> gametes (γαμέτης)

STATES OF FEELING

Love and Desire

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
amo-amare-amatum	love
cf. amicus, amici	friend
bonum, boni	good
cupido, cupidinis	desire
eros (έρως)	love (noun)
phileo (φιλέω)	love (verb)
verum, veri	true

Hatred and Disapproval

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
odium, odii	hatred
miseo (μισέω)	hate
as learned borrowing, used as prefix, <i>miso</i> -	hating
hostilis, hostilis	enemy (adj.)
cf. hostis, hostis	enemy (n.)
malum, mali	bad
fallo-fallere-falsum	deceive
pseudon (ψεῦδον)	lie
as learned borrowing, used as prefix, <i>pseudo</i> -	false

Oh What a Tangled Web We Weave . . .

Perhaps the worst offense against the divine was *hybris*, an expression of insolence so delusional that it might lead one to believe that one’s strength or power was equal to that of the gods. Needless to say, it was always punished. According to Greek myth, Arachne was a beautiful young girl who boasted that her spinning was finer than that of Athena. The two had a contest, and indeed, the work of the mortal girl was better. The goddess flew into a rage and began beating poor Arachne, who, in despair, hung herself. But in a final act of revenge for Arachne’s *hybris*, Athena turned Arachne into a spider. Arachne’s talent survived her transformation, however, and she continues to spin even now.

Arachne (ἀράχνη) = spider
hybris (ὕβρις) = shamelessness; in Greek myth, believing that one is the equal to the gods

I’m Okay. Are You Okay?

Of course, our emotions and behavior may seem to others to be abnormal, and one person’s fear may be another’s madness or uncontrollable desire.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
mania (μανία)	madness
phobos (φόβος)	fear
insania, insaniae	madness
cf. sanum, sani	healthy

THE FOUR HUMORS

In antiquity and in the Middle Ages, it was commonly believed by Greek and Roman medical practitioners that the body contained four different fluids, or humors. They were yellow bile, black bile, blood, and phlegm. Doctors said that these four humors, when in proper balance, produced good health; but an excess or deficiency of any one of them could cause both physical and mental illness. Even today, derivatives of these words are not only used to describe moods and personality types, but also have become part of the modern psychiatric vocabulary.



Etruscan sarcophagus lid (Villa Giulia, Rome)

<i>Latin or Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
chole (χολή)	yellow bile	choler	anger
bilis, bilis	yellow bile	bilious	irritable
melancholia (μελαγχολία)	black bile	melancholy	deep sadness
cf. melas, melanos (μέλας)	black		
phlegma (φλέγμα)	phlegm	phlegmatic	apathetic; slow
sanguis, sanguinis	blood	sanguine	cheerful; hopeful

STAR WARS

There were other theories of personality and behavior in antiquity. For example, many people believed (and some still do) that the planets and other heavenly bodies affect human behavior and health, and that individuals born under the signs of particular planets share the temperaments of the gods who ruled over those planets, and who gave the planets their names.

The Planets and Their Roman Gods

<i>Planet/God</i>	<i>Roman Name</i>	<i>Function</i>
Mercury	Mercurius, Mercurii	winged messenger of the gods, always on the move
Venus	Venus, Veneris	goddess of love and sexual desire
Mars	Mars, Martis	god of war
Jupiter (Jove)	Juppiter, Jovis	ruler of the gods, who thus had reason to be happy
Saturn	Saturnus, Saturni	ruler of the gloomy underworld
Moon	Luna, Lunae	goddess whose changes in form and shape were believed to affect human behavior

But other gods could also affect human and animal behavior. Pan, the Greek god of flocks and herds, liked to play his pipes in the countryside; the shrill high notes would cause the animals to act in peculiar ways. It was also said that he could overwhelm his enemies merely by shouting, for his cry would cause them to feel sudden, unreasonable terror, or *panic*.

SCIENCE AND THE HUMAN MIND

Of course, society today is obsessed with precision and scientific measurement, even in the realm of human behavior. Modern psychology has devised all sorts of means to analyze how and why we act, and has developed systems by which human intelligence is thought to be accurately measured. The Greeks and Romans were not so precise in their measurements, but we still use their vocabulary to describe levels of intellectual ability. Who knows? Perhaps the Greeks and Romans were smarter than we are.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
intellego-intellegere-intellectum cf. lego-legere-lectum	understand, distinguish choose, read
idion (ἴδιον) cf. <i>idio</i> - used as prefix in English,	one's own, private "peculiar to"
idiotes (ιδιώτης)	private citizen
imbecillum, imbecilli cf. baculum, baculi	weak stick
moron (μωρόν)	foolish, stupid
sophon (σοφόν)	wise

Don't Be Foolish

An oxymoron is a figure of speech that joins two terms that are contradictory. Here are two examples:

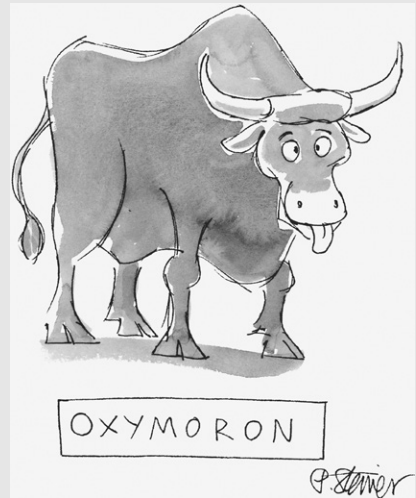
“Jumbo shrimp are pretty ugly.”

“He is clearly confused.”

δξύς = clever, sharp

You're an Idiot!

The word *idiotes* (ἰδιώτης) was applied to those who cared only for their private affairs and did not participate in public life; thus, its meaning became pejorative.



“Oxymoron.” © The New Yorker
Collection 2000 Peter Steiner
from cartoonbank.com. All Rights
Reserved.



10: EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. In the following questions, fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of word. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct.

1. A *magnifying* glass _____ objects _____.
2. The *minimum* wage is the _____ amount one can be paid.
3. The *mayor* of the city is supposed to have _____ power than other officials.
4. Someone who is *demented* is _____ his _____.
5. Our *personalities* are really just _____.
6. In a *sorority*, the members consider themselves to be _____.
7. If you name your dog *Fido*, you expect him to be _____.
8. A *misogynist* _____.
9. *Cupid* was the Roman god of _____.
10. *Inanimate* objects do _____ have _____.
11. *Genealogy* is _____.
12. A person with a *martial* disposition enjoys _____.
13. An *egotist* is an individual whose favorite pronoun is _____.
14. To *ameliorate* a situation is to make it _____.
15. When philosophers search for the eternal verities, they are looking for those ideas that are always _____.
16. An *ultimatum* is a _____ proposal or demand.
17. A *pessimist* is always sure that the _____ will happen.
18. An *optimist* always thinks the _____ about circumstances.

19. He made a *fallacious* argument because he wanted to _____ me.
20. His *erratic* behavior made me think that his mind was _____.
21. He was so arrogant that even his friends thought him guilty of _____.
22. He was found guilty of *bigamy* when he admitted that he had _____.
23. His *infamous* behavior brought _____ to his family.
24. His *odious* behavior caused everyone to _____ him.
25. *Idiosyncratic* behavior is _____ an individual.
26. A *Francophile* _____ all things French.
27. The *pseudonymous* author used a _____ because he did not wish to reveal his identity.
28. *Psychosis* is a diseased condition of the _____.
29. I knew I had performed badly, but his *pejorative* comments made me feel _____.

B. Answer the following questions. If you are not sure of the answers, check your unabridged dictionary.

30. Philosophers have always discussed the *summum bonum*. What is it? _____
31. Of what crime are you guilty if you kill your brother? _____
32. Where should your *superiors* be? _____
33. In the counting of votes, what is the difference between a *plurality* and a *majority*? _____
34. What is the literal meaning of *matriarchy*? _____ What is its current usage? _____
35. What is the difference between *sanguine* and *sanguinary*? _____
36. What is the literal meaning of *animus*? _____ What is its current usage? _____

37. What is the difference in meaning between *amiable* and *amicable*? _____

38. What is the meaning of the Latin phrase *persona non grata*? _____
39. What do the etymologies of the words *matrimony* and *matron* tell us about the ancient Roman understanding of the purpose of marriage? _____
40. Their marital bliss was shattered when he committed *uxoricide*. What had he done? _____

41. What kind of cell is a *gamete*? _____
42. What is the literal meaning of *patrimony*? _____ What is its current usage? _____
43. I know it's not really true, but it seems to me that every time the moon is full, people act like _____.

44. His *moronic* behavior convinced me that he was a _____.

How would you characterize someone whose personality can be characterized as:

45. jovial _____
46. saturnine _____
47. mercurial _____

What are the following fears, forms of madness, or desires?

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-------|-----------------------|-------|
| 48. monomania | _____ | 56. egomania | _____ |
| 49. megalomania | _____ | 57. dipsomania | _____ |
| 50. pyromania | _____ | 58. kleptomania | _____ |
| 51. gamophobia | _____ | 59. agoraphobia | _____ |
| 52. xenophobia | _____ | 60. acrophobia | _____ |
| 53. claustrophobia | _____ | 61. bibliophilia | _____ |
| 54. ailurophobia | _____ | 62. gynophobia | _____ |
| 55. ponophobia | _____ | 63. triskaidekaphobia | _____ |

C. By now, you should be able to recognize Romance language cognates of Latin words.

Without consulting a dictionary, see if you can figure out the English meanings of each of the following French (F.), Spanish (S.), or Italian (I.) words.

64. rey (S. noun)

65. amigo (S. noun)

66. malo (S. adjective)

67. animato (I. adjective)

68. faire (F. verb)

69. fratello (I. noun)

70. dire (F. verb)

71. odio (I. and S. noun)

72. con (I. and S. prep.)

73. padre (S. noun)

74. verdad (S adjective)

Compared to What?

The comparative and superlative forms of Latin adjectives can also have English derivatives.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus, boni = good	melior = better	optimus = best
exter, exteri = outside	exterior = outer	extremus = outermost,
cf. adverb extra		farthest
magnus, magni = large	major = larger	maximus = largest
malus, mali = bad	pejor = worse	pessimus = worst
multus, multi = much	plus, pluris = more	plurimus = most
parvus, parvi = small	minor/minus = smaller	minimus = smallest
superus, superi = above	superior = higher	supremus or summus =
cf. preposition super		highest or last
ulter, ultri = beyond	ulterior = farther	ultimus = farthest, last
cf. adverb ultra		

The preceding adjectives are irregular in the formation of their comparative and superlative forms; the regular superlative ending is -issimus (-issima, -issimum). How does that ending appear in the various Romance languages?

It's My Fault

If you need to apologize, but want to show off at the same time, you can always say *mea culpa*.

culpa, culpae

fault, blame

No, It's Not

The legal term *non compos mentis* can be applied to mentally ill individuals who do not have the capacity to reason or to manage one's affairs. It is sometimes used as a defense argument for a plea that the defendant cannot be held legally responsible for his actions.

non compos mentis = not of sound mind

THE SOCIAL SCIENCES



Triumphal arch of the emperor Septimius Severus (Rome).
Septimius Severus ruled 193–211 CE.

Homo sum. Humani nihil a mē alienum puto.

“I am human. I think that nothing human is strange to me.”

TERENCE (second-century BCE Roman comic playwright), *The Self-Tormentor*

THEORY AND PRACTICE

In most college and university catalogs, the departments of political science and psychology can be found under the heading of the social sciences, those disciplines whose practitioners observe, analyze, and formulate theories about the behavior of people in specific groups and situations, individuals in their relationship to others, and the etiology of other kinds of social phenomena. Some of the social sciences are relatively new—the term *sociology* was first used to mean the scientific study of society in the early nineteenth century—while others, such as anthropology, have their roots in the ancient Greek curiosity about the non-Greek world.

<i>Latin or Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
etia (αἰτία)	cause
solvo-solvere-solutum	loosen, untie, release
phenomenon (φαινόμενον)	a thing come to light; appearance; in scientific terminology, the learned borrowing <i>pheno-</i> = shining
socius, socii	ally, companion
theoria (θεωρία)	viewing; speculation; contemplation
modus, modi	measure, manner, way
paradigma (παράδειγμα)	pattern
schema (σχῆμα)	form, shape, figure

ANTHROPOLOGY

It is clear that the most gold by far is in the northern part of Europe, but how it is obtained, I can not say with certainty. It is said that the one-eyed Arimaspians steal it from the griffins; but I do not believe in one-eyed men who in all other ways are like the rest of men.

HERODOTUS (fifth-century BCE Greek historian), *Inquiries* iii.116

Anthropology is the study of human culture in all its aspects: social organization, economic and political systems, linguistics, and prehistory. Although the ancient Greeks were intensely curious about the customs and practices of non-Greeks (whom they lumped together under the general heading of βάρβαροι), it was not until the eighteenth century that the modern discipline of anthropology began to take shape. In part, it found its intellectual origins in the ideal of the European Enlightenment—one that emphasized “reason” over tradition and taught that scientific methods could be applied to the study of human society—and in part through colonialism, which

brought Europeans into direct contact with the cultures of North and South America, Africa, and Asia. It was believed by these earliest practitioners of the discipline that the origins of the structures of “modern” European society could be understood by exploring those of the cultures that they considered to be less developed, or even “primitive.”

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
anthropos (ἄνθρωπος)	man, mankind
barbaroi (βάρβαροι)	all who were not Greek
colo-colere-cultum > colonia, coloniae	till (the soil); inhabit; take care of; practice estate; settlement
ethnos (ἔθνος) > ethnicos (ἐθνικός)	nation, people foreign

SOCIOLOGY

Culture is roughly anything we do that monkeys don't.

Attributed to Lord Raglan, a nineteenth-century British general

Sociology, yet another product of the Enlightenment, had its origins in the attempt to apply the rational methodology of the natural sciences to the study of the social lives of people, groups, and societies. Today the discipline focuses on the study of social behavior through the empirical and systematic examination of social institutions and organizations that influence human action and cultural identity.

*For if it were proposed to all peoples to choose the best customs out of all,
after close examination, they would each choose their own as best.*

HERODOTUS (fifth-century BCE Greek historian), *Inquiries* iii.38

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
empeiron (ἐμπειρον)	experienced
organon (ὄργανον)	instrument, tool; work, project
signum, signi	sign, seal, mark
systema (σύστημα)	the whole; composition

Utopia

The social sciences sometimes make a claim for the relevance and applicability of their models to the solution of human social problems. Nevertheless, despite the efforts of sociologists, political theorists, economists, and other social thinkers, we are still faced with the paradox that our scientific study of human behavior, in all its forms, has not yet produced the ideal society. Perhaps, sadly, the sixteenth-century philosopher Sir Thomas More was correct in calling his ideal society *Utopia*.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
plico-plicere-plicatum	fold
idea (ἰδέα)	form, class, kind
topos (τόπος)	place; topic
ou or u (οὐ)	not

ECONOMICS

*He thought that there was no other kind of enjoyment of riches and money than extravagance,
and that only stingy and despicable men kept a correct account of what they spent,
while fine and truly great men wasted and squandered.*
SUETONIUS (first-century CE), *Life of the Emperor Nero*

Although the ownership of real property remained the aristocratic standard of wealth until the end of antiquity, as early as the second millennium BCE, Greek merchants grew prosperous by trading with the various peoples who lived around the shores of the Mediterranean, while Greek adventurers who had hired themselves out as mercenaries brought back some of the remarkable wares of Egypt and the East. Some historians have suggested that the Trojan War, far from being a battle over the beautiful Helen, was actually a struggle over competing economic spheres of influence. The high finances of bonds, stock options, and mergers and acquisitions may have been unknown to the Greeks and the Romans, but lucrative trade, commerce, and speculative investment flourished in the classical world.

Because the land was poor, and perhaps because life at home was sometimes dangerous, sometimes dull, the Greeks often left home to seek their fortunes. Perhaps the most famous Greek adventurer was the mythical hero Odysseus; but others sought an easier and, perhaps, more profitable life in Asia Minor, the home not only of the legendary king Midas, but also of Croesus, the sixth-century BCE Lydian king who is credited with having invented money.

The conquests of Alexander the Great in the fourth century BCE extended the Greek view as far as India; and where Greek armies went, traders and merchants soon followed. Although Alexander's empire did not outlast his lifetime, contact between East and West continued in the Roman period. The profits generated by the sale of agricultural products, such as grain and olive oil, as well as the demand for expensive luxury goods, allowed at least a few Romans to accumulate a great deal of money. The government held the monopolies on some industries; but, by and large, business was a matter of "caveat emptor."

Those few Romans who could afford it (and some who could not) often indulged in conspicuous consumption and an opulent lifestyle. Consumer debt and fraud were probably invented by the Romans; and by late antiquity, inflation was rampant and prices sky-high. Moneylenders charged extremely high rates of interest to those who were insolvent and on the edge of bankruptcy. A coherent fiscal policy, including a budget, seems to have been nonexistent throughout most of Roman history. In order to meet its obligations (and the indulgences of its emperors), the state raised money through a variety of means, including expropriation of property; conquest; and, of course, taxation. The eventual collapse of the Roman economy is a depressingly all-too-familiar story.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
<i>copia, copiae</i>	supply, abundance
<i>ecos (οἶκος)</i>	house, household
as a learned borrowing in science <i>eco-</i>	environment
<i>emporion (ἐμπόριον)</i>	market
<i>flo-flare-flatum</i>	blow
> <i>inflo-inflare-inflatum</i>	swell
<i>fraus, fraudis</i>	deceit
<i>haereo-haerere-haesum</i>	stick, cling to
<i>lucrum, lucri</i>	profit
<i>mercor-mercari-mercatum</i>	trade
and <i>merces, mercedis</i>	pay, wages
<i>pendo-pendere-pensum</i>	hang
<i>proprium, proprii</i>	one's own, special; fitting, proper
<i>specio-specere-spectrum</i>	look at
in compounds, <i>-spicio, -spicere</i>	
<i>taxo-taxare-taxatum</i>	tax
cf. <i>tango-tangere-tactum</i>	touch



Bound captive (Hadrian's Forum, Rome)

She's Worth Her Salt

Roman soldiers were given an allowance to buy salt (*sal, salis*), an important commodity in the ancient world, and used primarily as a preservative. The allowance was called a *salarium*. The word was then applied to any payment for work.

Let This Be a Warning to You

The first mint in Rome was located in the temple of Juno Moneta, so named, the Romans believed, because when the city had been threatened with invasion, the sacred geese of the goddess had warned them.

moneo-monēre-monitum = warn

Mary Had a Little Lamb

In the ancient world, before the “invention” of money, wealth was measured by one’s material possessions, especially flocks of sheep or herds of cattle. The word for “herd” or “flock” thus became the etymological root of the Latin word for “money.” That which belonged to you was your *peculium* (private property).

pecu = flock, herd

> *pecunia, pecuniae* = money

And in Conclusion, a Word from Our Sponsor

The ancient economy seems to have managed quite well without the aid of advertising, subliminal or otherwise, although some of the Roman emperors probably could have used some media enhancement and better public-service announcements to improve their image.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
claudo-claudere-clausum	close
in compounds, -cludo-cludere-clusum	
spondeo-spondere-sponsum	pledge, promise
limen, liminis	threshold
medium, medii	middle; in the open; public
nuntio-nuntiare-nuntiatum	announce
imago, imaginis	copy, likeness



II: EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. Answer each question or fill in the blanks with the literal meaning of the italicized word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning, check your unabridged dictionary.

1. *Empirical* knowledge comes from _____.
2. The teacher said I was a *paradigm* of good behavior; a _____ to be followed.
3. A *systemic* infection affects the _____ of the body.
4. When I was *absolved* of the crime, I was _____ any blame.
5. A *significant* event _____ on history.
6. When asked to *moderate* her voice, she began to speak in _____ tones.
7. She gave me a *schematic* drawing of the machine, so that I could see its _____.
8. An *impecunious* person has _____.
9. What is the connection between a herd of cows and money? _____
10. *Tangible* results are _____.
11. A *mercenary* individual is interested only in _____.
12. What is the literal meaning of *topography*? _____ What is its current usage?

13. Our *tactile* sense is stimulated by _____.
14. An *adherent* _____ his beliefs.
15. New York City may be called an *emporium* because it is a _____ of ideas.
16. In a *conflation* of accounts of an event, the details have been _____.
17. What is the difference in meaning between *appropriate* (verb) and *appropriate* (adjective)?

18. A *lucrative* business is one that shows a _____.
19. We now use the word *mediocre* in a pejorative way. What is its literal meaning? _____
What is its current usage? _____
20. You *defrauded* me of my life savings when you took them _____ me by _____.
21. What is the literal meaning of *despondent*? _____ What is its current usage? _____
Can you figure out how it came to take on this usage? _____
22. When medical science looks for the *etiology* of a disease, it is seeking its _____.
23. What are two different usages of *cultivate*? _____; _____
24. *Subliminal* advertising influences us by going _____ of our consciousness.
25. What is the literal meaning of the term *macroeconomics*? _____ What is its current usage? _____
26. Where is *Utopia*? _____

B. Everywhere I turn ...

What are the literal meanings and current usages of each of the following words?

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Literal Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>
27. subversion	_____	_____
28. perverse	_____	_____
29. reversion	_____	_____
30. diversionary	_____	_____
31. converse	_____	_____
32. aversion	_____	_____
33. incontrovertible	_____	_____

C. Fold in the following prefixes ...

What are the literal meanings and current usages of the following words?

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Literal Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>
34. replication	_____	_____
35. supplication	_____	_____
36. implication	_____	_____
37. complicated	_____	_____
38. duplicitous	_____	_____
39. compliant	_____	_____
40. explicate	_____	_____

D. It All Depends ...

What are the literal meanings and current usages of the following words?

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Literal Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>
41. impend	_____	_____
42. depend	_____	_____
43. expense	_____	_____
44. pensive	_____	_____
45. suspense	_____	_____
46. compendium	_____	_____
47. pendulous	_____	_____

E. It All Depends on How You Look at It ...

What are the literal meanings and current usages of the following words?

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Literal Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>
48. introspective	_____	_____
49. prospective	_____	_____
50. retrospective	_____	_____
51. spectacular	_____	_____
52. perspective	_____	_____
53. circumspect	_____	_____
54. perspicacious	_____	_____

F. Let Me Count the Change

What are the Latin roots of the following currencies?

- 55. the English pound _____
- 56. the Italian lira _____
- 57. the Spanish peseta _____

HUMAN BIOLOGY *and* MEDICINE I



Asclepius, the Greek god of healing and patron deity of physicians (National Museum, Athens)

Life is short, science is long; opportunity is elusive, experiment is dangerous, judgment is difficult.

It is not enough for the physician to do what is necessary, but the patient and the attendants must do their part as well, and circumstances must be favorable.

APHORISMS I.1 (Hippocratic Corpus)

MODERN MEDICINE AND ANCIENT TERMINOLOGY

Perhaps no other area that affects our lives demonstrates so clearly the influence of Greek and Latin on English vocabulary as does the field of medicine. Although new diseases are defined and new technologies devised every day, medicine has created for itself an inexhaustible source for an expanding terminology by continually drawing upon Greek and Latin roots.¹

THE HUMAN BODY

It is not possible to look at the constituent parts of human beings, such as blood, flesh, bones, blood-vessels and the like without considerable distaste.

ARISTOTLE, *On the Parts of Animals*

The human biological and medical sciences have thoroughly investigated the functions and operations of every part of the human body. They have taught us that the body is a wonderful machine that is extraordinarily efficient (most of the time). It is composed of over 200 bones, 700 muscles, and approximately five quarts of blood, and it is covered by about twenty-five square feet of skin. In addition, it possesses a remarkably intricate nervous system, as well as a multitude of organs that carry on vital functions within the machine.

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
life	vita, vitae	bios (βίος)	bio-
blood	sanguis, sanguinis	hema, hematos (αἷμα)	hema- or hemato-; -emia
body	corpus, corporis	soma, somatos (σῶμα)	somato-
bone	os, ossis	osteon (ὀστέον)	osteo-
muscle	musculus, musculi	mys, myos (μῦς)	myo-
nerve	nervus, nervi	neuron (νεῦρον)	neuro-
skin	cutis, cutis	derma, dermatos (δέρμα)	dermato-

1. Note that most specialized medical terms are derived from Greek, rather than Latin, vocabulary. Almost all English compound forms derived from Greek that are used in medical terminology are learned borrowings.

Shake, Rattle, and Roll

Many bones of the human body derive their names from their seeming resemblance to other objects. For example, the collar bone, or *clavicle*, was thought by early anatomists to resemble the shape of a key, while the shinbone was called a *tibia* because of its similarity in form to a flute. And if you hearing ringing in your ears, that's because the auditory ossicles are called the *malleus*, *incus*, and *stapes*.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
clavus, clavi	key > collarbone. What does the <i>-cle</i> ending indicate?
patella, patellae	small pan > kneecap
tibia, tibiae	flute > shinbone
fibula, fibulae	buckle, clamp > leg bone that extends from knee to ankle
malleus, mallei	hammer
incus, incudis	anvil
stapes, stapis	stirrup

Like all machines, however, the human body is subject to occasional breakdowns (despite the classical ideal of *sana mens in corpore sano*). When this happens, we visit the doctor; and sometimes, we may even end up as patients in the hospital.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
hygieia (ὑγίεια)	health
salus, salutis	health
sanum, sani	healthy
<i>mens sana in corpore sano</i>	a sound mind in a sound body
iatros (ἰατρός)	doctor, physician
medicus, medici	healer
doceo–docēre–doctum	show, teach
–logist	specialist (learned borrowing), cf. <i>–logy</i>
hospes, hospitis	host; guest, stranger
morbus, morbi	illness
patior–pati–passum	suffer, endure
cf. pascho (πάσχω)	suffer, endure
> pathos (πάθος)	suffering, misfortune

Is That English?

The French word *jargon* originally meant the chattering of birds, but now means a specialized vocabulary used by a particular group or profession that is difficult for others to understand. For example, when the doctor explains, “I’m afraid you have a rather severe bilateral probital hematoma,” what he really is saying is “Wow! What a horrific-looking black eye.”

MEDICAL SPECIALTIES

Today, of course, most doctors are specialists. There are seemingly as many specialties in medicine as there are parts of the human body, but we can get to the heart of the matter if we are willing to be patient. Let’s start at the top and come face to face with what may be bothering us.

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
head	caput, capitis	cephale (κεφαλή)	cephalo-
brain	cerebrum, cerebri	encephalos (ἐγκέφαλος)	encephalo-
eye	oculus, oculi	ophthalmos (ὀφθαλμός)	ophthalmo-
ear	auris, auri	ous, otos (ὠς)	oto-
nose	nasus, nasi	rhis, rhinos (ῥίς)	rhino-
mouth	os, oris	stoma, stomatos (στόμα)	stomato-
tooth	dens, dentis	odous, odontos (ὀδούς)	odonto-
tongue	lingua, linguae	glossa (γλῶσσα) or glotta (γλῶττα)	glosso- glotto-

Hermon of Thasus. His blindness was cured by Asclepius. But, since afterward he did not bring the thank-offerings, the god made him blind again. When he came back and slept again in the Temple, the god made him well.

—inscription from the temple of Asclepius at Epidaurus, Greece

There are doctors who attempt to straighten us out or get us back on our feet:

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
orthon (ὀρθόν)	straight
pes, pedis	foot
pous, podos (πούς)	foot
skeletos (σκελετός)	dried up; mummy
therapeia (θεραπεία)	service; care

There are doctors who specialize in the diseases of particular organs:

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
belly	abdomen, abdominis	enteron (έντερον)	entero-
	stomachus, stomachi	gaster, gastros (γαστήρ)	gastro-
heart	cors, cordis	cardia (καρδία)	cardio-
kidney	renum, reni	nephros (νεφρός)	nephro-
liver		hepar, hepato (ήπαρ)	hepato-
lung	pulmo, pulmonis	pneumon (πνευμών)	pneumo-

Take a Deep Breath

South Carolina's state motto is *dum spiro spero*. "As long as I am breathing, I have hope."

spiro-spirare-spiratum	breathe
spero-sperare-speratum	hope

Other doctors specialize in particular age groups or in a particular gender:

<i>Latin or Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
femina, feminae	woman
gyne, gynecos (γυνή)	woman
aner, andros (άνήρ)	man
anthropos (άνθρωπος)	man, human being
homo, hominis	man, human being
vir, viri	man
senex, senis	old man
geron, gerontos (γέρων)	old man
juvenis, juvenis	young person
puer, pueri	child (boy)
pes, pedos (παῖς)	child

Hippocratic Oath

The oath that medical students take today has its origins in Greek medicine. Called the Hippocratic Oath, it is attributed to one of the most famous of ancient Greek healers, Hippocrates.

I swear by Apollo, the healer, by Asclepius, by Hygieia and Panacea and all the divinities of healing, and call to witness all the gods and goddesses that I may keep this oath and promise to the best of my ability and judgment . . . that I will use my power to help the sick to the best of my ability and judgment; that I will abstain from harming or wronging anyone by it. . . . If, therefore, I observe this oath and do not violate it, may I prosper both in my life and my art, gaining good repute among all men for all time. If I transgress and forswear this oath, may my lot be otherwise.

<i>Deity</i>	<i>Function</i>
Apollo	Greek god of light, prophecy, healing; but also the deity who brought disease
Asclepius	half-divine son of Apollo, and patron of Greek physicians. Not content with healing the sick, he attempted to bring the dead back to life. For this act, Zeus struck him down with a thunderbolt. In ancient Greece, he was honored as the patron deity of physicians.
Hygieia	The daughter of Asclepius, and worshipped as the personification of health
Panacea	“All-Healer,” said by some to be the daughter of Asclepius

DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
gnosis (γνώσις)	knowledg
cf. nosco-noscere-notum	know
bacterion (βακτήριον)	rod, stick
cf. bacillus, bacilli	small rod
frango-frangere-fractum	break
fungus, fungi	sponge
cf. sphongos (σφόνγγος)	sponge

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
trauma, traumatosis (τραῦμα)	wound
virus, viri	poison
-osis ²	diseased condition of, state of
-itis	inflammation of
-oma	swelling
-iasis	diseased condition of
-pathy ³	diseased condition; treatment
-plegia	paralysis
cf. plege (πληγή)	blow
-algia	pain
cf. algos (άλγος)	pain
-odynia	pain
cf. odyne (ὀδύνη)	pain
-rrhea	flow or discharge
cf. rheo (ρέω)	flow
-gen	production of
cf. genos (γένος)	birth, source
-genic	producing
manus, manūs	hand
opsis (ὄψις)	sight
cf. opteuo (ὀπτεύω)	see, look at
-tomy	cutting, incision
< tomos (τομός)	cutting
-ectomy	cutting out, removal
-stomy	making an opening
< stoma (στόμα)	mouth, opening

Take Two Pills and Call Me in the Morning

When you go to the pharmacy to fill a prescription, be very careful. The root of the word is pharmakos (φαρμακός) = poisoner.

2. The endings *-osis*, *-itis*, *-oma*, and *-iasis* were used in ancient Greek to form nouns, but they have been arbitrarily assigned these meanings in modern medical practice.

3. Learned borrowing from Greek: cf. *pathos* (πάθος) = *suffering*. In compound forms, used as a suffix = *disease, condition*. It is also used in names or systems of treating disease, e.g., *osteopathy*.

TO SLEEP, PERCHANCE TO DREAM

Sometimes, all it takes is a good night's sleep to make us feel better . . .

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
valeo-valēre	be strong, be in good health
> valesco	What does the suffix <i>-sco</i> indicate?
hypnos (ὑπνος)	sleep
coma (κῶμα)	deep sleep
somnus, somni	sleep
sopor, soporis	deep sleep
Morpheus	the son of Somnus, he was the bringer of dreams, and given the name because of the various forms he could assume.
cf. morphe (μορφή)	shape, form



Mosaic “skull,” representing the finality of death. It was uncovered in the dining room of a house in Pompeii, Italy. (Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples)

but it doesn't cure everything, for we are mortal . . .

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
mors, mortis	death
< morior, mori, mortuum	die
thanatos (θάνατος)	death

Remember: *de mortuis, nil nisi bonum*: about the dead, (speak) nothing but good.



Perseus slaying the gorgon Medusa. Sixth century BCE (Selinunte, Sicily)

Dig in Your Heels . . .

Sometimes a word goes through so many changes of meaning that its original root is unnoticed. *Recalcitrant*, which now means unmanageable or stubborn, is derived from the Latin *calx*, *calcis* = heel of the foot. The verb *recalcitrare* originally meant to kick back one’s heels, and was applied to horses.

Or Change Your Mind!

Some words are nice to know just because they sound so interesting. *Tergiversate* means to change one’s mind or opinion, but its literal meaning is derived from

tergum, *tergi* (back)
verso-versare-versatum (turn)

If you don’t turn your back on an idea, you may turn your mind toward it in a critical way. Thus, we have the verb *animadvert*, which originally meant to take notice of, but which has now come to mean to criticize, or pay attention in a negative way.

Looks Can Wound, and Words Can Hurt!

A supercilious individual is contemptuous of others and demonstrates it by raising his eyebrows, and sarcastic words can seem to tear at our skin.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
supercilium, supercilii	eyebrow
cf. cilium, cilia	eyelash
sarx, sarcos (σάρξ)	flesh
>sarcazo (σαρκάζω)	tear flesh

Living Well Is the Best Revenge

Leading a healthy lifestyle is all very well and good, but perhaps the French *bon vivant* who is leading the Italian *la dolce vita* has a better time. Of course one could just shrug one’s shoulders and say, “*C’est la vie*.” What is the Latin root of these words, and what do these expressions mean?

Ave Atque Vale!

The Roman equivalent of “have a good day” was the phrase *avē atque valē*. Although both imperative forms mean “be well” or “strong,” they also came to be used as a word of greeting or of good-bye. Thus, the phrase is often translated as “Hail and farewell!”

aveo-avēre = be well

Of course, not everyone was so joyful about saying goodbye. Gladiators about to enter into the arena faced the emperor and declared, “*Ave, Imperator. Nos morituri te salutamus*.” (“Hail, Emperor. We who are about to die salute you.”)

An Ounce of Protection

Although modern medicine emphasizes the prevention of disease through immunization, diet, and good health habits, many things can go wrong with the human body. The medical profession, however, offers a variety of approaches to diagnose, treat, and cure illness, or at least to alleviate it.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
dieta (δῖαιτα)	way of life
levis, levis	light, easy
munus, muneris	gift, reward

Holy Cow!

For millennia, smallpox was a dreaded disease that caused hundreds of millions of deaths in every part of the world. In 1796, the English physician Edward Jenner tested the common opinion that dairymaids who had contracted cowpox, a much milder disease, from the infected udders of cows, had immunity to smallpox. In what was a perhaps medically unethical experiment, he inoculated a small boy with cowpox; the boy recovered rather quickly, with no lasting effects. Two months later, Jenner inoculated the boy with pus from a smallpox lesion, but the child did not develop the disease.

vacca, vaccae = cow



12: EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. Answer each question or fill in the blanks with the literal meaning of the underlined word or part of the word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning, check your unabridged dictionary.

1. A *sanguivorous* animal _____.
2. What is the Latin cognate of *sympathy*? _____
3. A *corpuscle* is a _____.
4. An *ossuary* is _____ are kept.
5. *Psychosomatic* medicine examines the interaction of the _____ and _____.
6. What are the literal meanings and current usages of the following words?

English Word	Literal Meaning	Current Usage
empathy	_____	_____
sympathy	_____	_____
apathy	_____	_____
antipathy	_____	_____

7. A *subcutaneous* injection is given _____.
8. A *corpulent* individual is _____.
9. The doctor said he could not detect my *vital* signs, but I was sure I was still _____.
10. A *patient* is supposed to _____ his illness.
11. If you move to a *salubrious* climate, you hope that it will bring you _____.

12. What are the following medical specialties?

dermatology _____

hematology _____

neurology _____

13. A *sanitarium* is _____ an individual hopes to become _____.

14. The Latin cognate of *hypodermic* is _____.

15. If an individual's beliefs have become *ossified*, they have been _____ as hard as _____.

16. A *misanthrope* is a person who _____.

17. Is it possible that the Roman poet P. Ovidius Naso had a prominent _____?

18. *Binoculars* enable us to see with _____.

19. Someone who is *cerebral* uses her _____.

20. What is the distinguishing feature of the following:

octopus _____ centipede _____

tripod _____ biped _____

21. What skill does a *multilingual* individual possess? _____ What is the Greek cognate of multilingual? _____

22. *Rhinoplasty* is an elegant name for a _____.

23. An *electroencephalogram* is _____ about the activity of the _____.

24. A *pulmonary* function test measures the capacities of your _____.

25. A *captain* is the _____ of a military unit.

26. *Cordial* feelings arise in the _____.

27. A *periodontist* takes care of the area _____.

28. A *gastronome* is _____ his _____.

29. What is the aural/oral method of learning a foreign language? _____

30. What is the literal meaning of *anemia*? _____ What is its current medical usage? _____ What is its meaning in the following sentence: The stock market's performance today was *anemic*. _____
31. An *androgynous* creature displays characteristics of both _____ and _____.
32. A *mortuary* is _____.
33. A *traumatic* experience is one that _____ you.
34. *Odontalgia* is an elegant word for _____.
35. The nineteenth-century American poet William Cullen Bryant wrote a work entitled *Thanatopsis*. What was its theme? _____
36. A *prognosticator* thinks he can _____ the future _____ it happens.
37. *Iatrogenic* illness is _____ the _____.
38. A *manuscript* is a document that has been _____ by _____.
39. If your teacher's lecture acts as a *soporific*, it may _____ you _____.
40. An *agnostic* says the proof of the existence of an ultimate cause of the universe is _____ able to be _____.
41. A *post mortem* examination is done _____.
42. If you agree to an *encephalectomy*, your _____ will be _____.
43. A *malleable* metal can be _____ into a shape. What does the word mean when applied to an individual? _____
44. A *valedictory* address is one that _____.
45. "To be in the arms of *Morpheus*" is an elegant way of saying that you are _____.
46. A *gerontologist* _____ the behavior and health of _____.
47. *Senility* is a disease of _____.
48. While I watched in horror, that well-behaved child suddenly *morphed* into a monster. What is the Greek root of this word and what is its meaning in this sentence? _____

49. His *puerile* behavior made me realize that although he was a grown man, emotionally he was still a _____.
50. My *remuneration* for the job was so small that I did not feel _____ for my work.
51. His *virulent* remarks against me made me feel as if I had been _____.
52. A *somniloquist* _____ while he is _____. What does a somnambulist do?

53. Although the politicians said the law would be a *panacea* for our problems, I knew it would not be a _____.
54. A *muscle* supposedly resembles a _____ in its movement.
55. What is the ordinary usage of the word *morbid*? _____ In medical terminology, what is its usage? _____
56. When my mother threatened to *decapitate* me if I did not clean my room, I knew she would take my _____ my body.
57. What is the difference in meaning between *sanguine* and *sanguinary*? _____

58. Under a system of *primogeniture*, the _____ inherits his parents' property.
59. In order to display *valor* in a difficult situation, one must be _____ in spirit.
60. What is a *valetudinarian*? _____
61. *Maintain* entered into English through French. Can you figure out its Latin roots? _____
62. What are the two different meanings of *invalid*?

63. In the following sentence, what is the meaning of the word *pathos*? "The pathos I felt when I heard her sing was overwhelming." _____
64. What does a *pathogen* do? _____
65. I am *senescent*, and now I am afraid that I am suffering from all the symptoms of _____.

66. He was such an awful person that although he was dead, I could not say one good thing about him. What Latin adage was I ignoring? _____

B. How Many Things Can You Break?

People and things can be broken in a number of ways. What are the current English meanings of the following words?

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------|---------------|-------|
| 67. fragment | _____ | 71. fraction | _____ |
| 68. fractious | _____ | 72. refract | _____ |
| 69. infraction | _____ | 73. frangible | _____ |
| 70. frail | _____ | 74. fragile | _____ |

C. Watch Where You Throw That Thing!

Sometimes a doctor will recommend an *injection* of a drug in order to relieve your symptoms or even to effect a cure.

jacio-jacere-jactum throw, heal

in compound form, jecere-jectum

English Word	Literal Meaning	Current Usage
75. dejected	_____	_____
76. conjecture	_____	_____
77. ejection	_____	_____
78. trajectory	_____	_____
79. abject	_____	_____
80. interjection	_____	_____
81. project (noun)	_____	_____
82. project (verb)	_____	_____
83. objective	_____	_____

D. Don't Confuse Me

In order to be a successful doctor, you will need to learn all these medical diagnoses and treatments. What are the following diseases, medical conditions, and treatments?

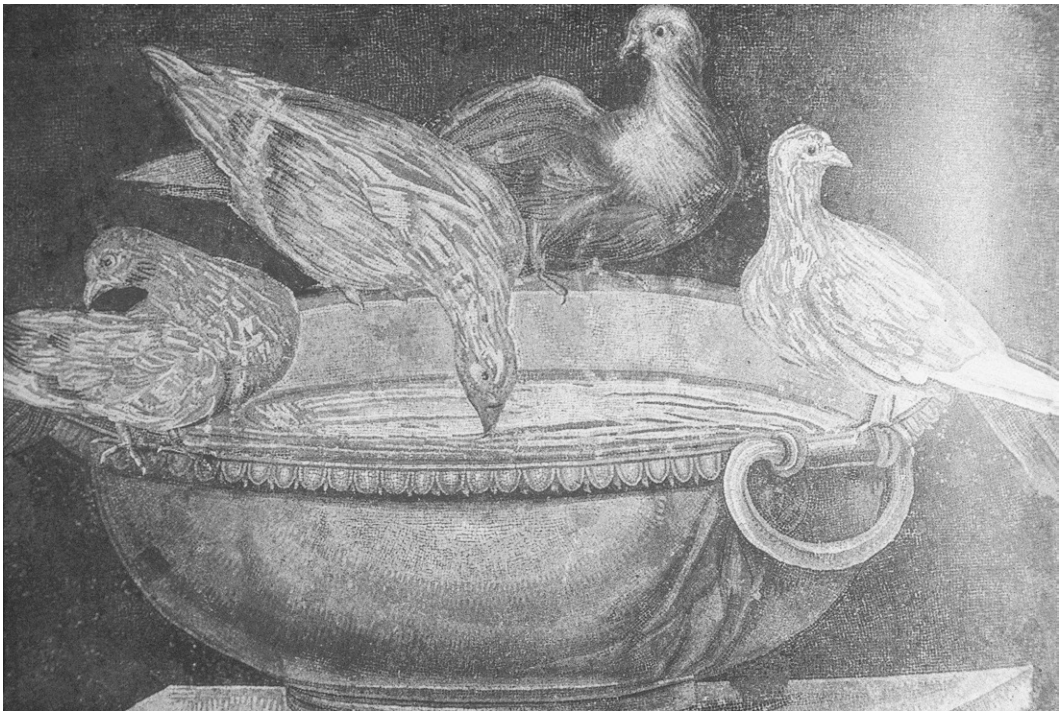
84. pericarditis _____

85. neuropathy _____

86. myalgia _____

87. glossectomy _____

HUMAN BIOLOGY *and* MEDICINE II



Mosaic from Hadrian's villa (Museo Capitolino, Rome)

When I reached the sanctuary, the god Asclepius bade me further to cover my head in rainy weather, wash myself without the aid of a servant, take exercise in the gymnasium, eat bread, cheese, celery and cabbage lettuce, drink lemon juice and milk, go for walks and not to omit to make sacrifice.

AELIUS ARISTIDES (second-century CE Greek orator)

ADVANCED MEDICAL TRAINING

In the preceding chapter, we surveyed all the major organs of the human body as well as the variety of ailments that might afflict them; but for those who wish to continue their medical education, what follows is an overview of the major systems, or structures to which those organs belong.¹ Once again, Greek and Latin roots provide the necessary language for labeling their various components and functions. Although many of these words have come into English unchanged, some of the words included in this chapter are learned borrowings. Indeed, ancient Greek and Roman physicians sometimes had an imperfect understanding not only of human anatomy, but of the functions of various organs and systemic processes.

THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

The circulatory, or cardiovascular, system consists of the heart and blood vessels.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>Original Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
vena, venae	vein	vein	veno-
phleps, phlebos (φλέψ)	vein	vein	phlebo-
arteria (ἀρτηρία)	windpipe	artery	arterio-
vas, vasis	vessel	vessel	vaso-
corona, coronae	crown	coronary	corono-
lymphā, lymphae	fluid; water	lymph	lympho-

The arterial system got its name from the fact that the ancient Greeks believed that the arteries carried air.

aer (ἀήρ) = air

THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

The respiratory system includes all those organs necessary for the taking in of oxygen and the giving off of carbon dioxide.

1. Medical and anatomical terms already given in chapter 12 are not repeated here.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>Original Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
spiro-spirare-spiratum	breathe	breathe	spiro-
pneo (πνέω)	breathe	breathe	pneo-
pneumon (πνεύμων)	lung	lung	pneumo-
jugulum, juguli	throat	throat	jugulo-
pharynx (φάρυγξ)	throat	passageway for air and food	pharyngo-
trachea (τραχεΐα)	rough	windpipe	tracheo-
bronchia (βρόγχια)	tubes	bronchia	bronchi-
pleura (πλευρά)	side; rib	pleura	pleuro-
diaphragm (διάφραγμα)	partition; midriff	diaphragm	phreno-
or fren (φρήν)	midriff; mind	diaphragm, mind	
thorax (θώραξ)	breastplate	chest	thoraco-

It's Not All in Your Head

The Greeks believed that the center of emotions and the home of the mind were in the diaphragm [phren (φρήν = diaphragm)]. From this notion we derive frenzy, frenetic, phrenology, and schizophrenia. What are the current meanings of these words?

THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

The digestive system includes all the organs necessary for taking in, breaking down, and absorbing food.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>Original Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>
digero-digerere-digestum	separate; divide	digest
pepto (πέπτω)	soften; cook	digest
intestinum, intestini	internal; intestine	intestine

The intestine, or alimentary canal, is divided into two parts, the small and large intestines. The small intestine consists of:

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>Original Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>
pylorus (πυλωρός)	gatekeeper	pylorus ²
duodeni	twelve	duodenum ³
jejunum, jejuni	empty; barren	jejunum ⁴
ileum, ilei	flank	ileum

The large intestine consists of:

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>Original Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>
caecum, caeci	blind; concealed	cecum
colon (κόλον)	colon	colon
rectum, recti	straight	rectum

There are several other organs whose secretions aid in the digestion of food:

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>Original Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
cholae (χολαί)	gall bladder	gall bladder	cholecysto-
pancreas (πάγκρεας)	sweetbread ⁵	pancreas	pancreato-

There are, of course, many words in Greek and Latin that have to do with eating, some of which have become part of modern medical terminology:

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
phagein (φαγεῖν)	eat	-phage, phago-
trophe (τροφή)	nourishment	-trophy
nutrio-nutrire-nutritum	nourish; support, take care of	nutri-
orexis (ὄρεξις)	appetite	-orexia
geusis (γεῦσις)	taste (noun)	-geusia

2. The pylorus is the opening between the stomach and duodenum.

3. The duodenum gets its name from its size, about twelve (duodeni) finger-breadths in length.

4. The jejunum is the middle portion of the small intestine. Ancient medical theory stated that after death, it was empty.

5. Literally, "all-flesh."

THE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

The human reproductive system consists of those organs and glands that are involved in the propagation of offspring.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
gone (γονή)	produce, offspring. What is the Latin cognate of this word?
propago-propagare-propagatum	extend; enlarge
ovum, ovi	egg
sperma (σπέρμα)	seed
hystera (ὑστέρα)	uterus
fetus, fetūs	offspring
embryon (ἐμβρυον)	young, fetus

It's Not Funny . . .

Some ancient Greek doctors believed that many mental disturbances in women were due to the dysfunction of the uterus. Although the word has lost its association with female behavior, *hysteria* is still used as a medical term to define a psychological condition that produces physical symptoms. It more commonly describes states of uncontrolled emotion of sadness, fear, or joy.

THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

The endocrine system consists of the ductless glands that produce hormones that are discharged into the blood or lymph and that then circulate throughout the body. They include the pituitary, thyroid, parathyroid, and adrenal glands; the insulin-secreting glands of the pancreas; and the gonads. These hormones control the body's ability to metabolize a variety of substances and affect every facet of its functioning. Many of these glands take their names either from their shape or location, such as the adrenal glands, which are located adjacent to the kidneys, or the thyroid, whose shape resembles an ancient Greek oblong-shaped shield that covered the body from neck to ankles. Where are the parathyroid glands located?

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
crino (κρίνω)	separate; secrete
endon (ἐνδον)	within
glans, glandis	acorn
hormao (ὁρμάω)	excite, stimulate
pituita, pituitae	phlegm
thyreos (θυρεός)	large shield
insula, insulae	island
creas (κρέας)	flesh, meat
metabole (μεταβολή)	change

Ahem . . .

Ancient Greek physicians believed that the function of the pituitary gland was to produce phlegm, one of the four humors.



Etruscan gorgon (Villa Giulia, Rome)

MORE USEFUL BEGINNINGS AND ENDINGS

The following Greek-based prefixes and suffixes are used in modern science and medicine to describe other systems, functions, and components of the body:

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Original Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
aden (ἀδὴν)	gland	denoting a gland	adeno-
blastos (βλαστός)	sprout, seed	denoting a seed or embryo	blasto-, -blast
cytos (κύτος)	hollow; vessel	denoting a cell	cyto-, -cyte
cystis (κύστις)	bladder	denoting a sac	cysto-, -cyst
histos (ἱστός)	web	denoting tissue	histo-
myelos (μυελός)	marrow	denoting bone marrow or spinal cord	myelo-
penia (πενία)	poverty	denoting deficiency	-penia
plasso (πλάσσω)	mold, shape	denoting a formation	-plasia
thrix, trichos (θρίξ)	hair	denoting hair	tricho-

The Long and the Short of It

All of the following prefixes are derived, with no change in meaning, from Greek adjectives, and are used in biology and medicine to describe a variety of physical characteristics.

<i>Greek Adjective</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>
brachy (βραχύ)	short	brachy-
brady (βραδύ)	slow	brady-
lepton (λεπτόν)	slender	lepto-
malakon (μαλακόν)	soft	malaco-
opisthen (ὀπισθεν)	at the back	opistho-
pachy (παχύ)	thick	pachy-
platy (πλατύ)	broad	platy-
scleron (σκληρόν)	hard	sclero-
tachy (ταχύ)	fast	tachy-
xeron (ξηρόν)	dry	xero-

Use Your Head . . .

The Latin word for hair is *capillus, capilli*. From what Latin noun is this word derived?

Ring Around the Collar

As you probably know from watching all those movies about Robin Hood, the Three Musketeers, and Queen Elizabeth, the traditional way of conferring knighthood is to tap the recipient on the shoulder with the flat side of a sword, in a gesture called accolade. Because knighthood was a reward for services performed, accolade now means any award or public praise.

collum, colli = neck

Scribble, Scribble!

By the way, those illegible letters that doctors so often scrawl on prescription forms are abbreviations of Latin phrases:

<i>Abbreviation</i>	<i>Latin Phrase</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ad lib.	ad libitum	as desired
b.i.d.	bis in diē	twice a day
b.i.d.	bis in nocte	twice a night
h.s.	hora somni	at bedtime
p.o.	per os	by mouth
q.i.d.	quater in diē	four times a day
q.v.	quantum vis	as much as you wish
s.o.s.	si opus est	if necessary
stat.	statim	immediately



13: EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. What are the following diseases, medical procedures, or biological processes?

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. venotomy _____ | 11. anorexia _____ |
| 2. arteriogram _____ | 12. trichotillomania _____ |
| 3. vasculitis _____ | 13. osteomalacia _____ |
| 4. phlebectomy _____ | 14. adenoma _____ |
| 5. tracheostomy _____ | 15. myelopathy _____ |
| 6. pleurodynia _____ | 16. histogenesis _____ |
| 7. dysgeusia _____ | 17. colonoscopy _____ |
| 8. tachycardia _____ | 18. pharyngoplegia _____ |
| 9. cholecystitis _____ | 19. pancreatalgia _____ |
| 10. brachypnea _____ | 20. pneumonia _____ |

B. Fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the underlined word or part of word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning, check your unabridged dictionary.

21. He was so aggressive that when he “went for the *jugular*,” everyone around covered their _____.
22. A *platypus* is a mammal distinguished by its _____.
23. A *pachyderm* is a mammal distinguished by its _____.
24. A *dyspeptic* individual is grouchy, perhaps because he has _____.
25. A *sclerotic* individual is one whose ideas have become _____.

26. The queen received a _____ at her coronation.
27. His *inspiring* speech allowed me to _____ his knowledge and wisdom.
28. What is the meaning of *atrophy* in medical terminology? _____
29. What is its meaning in the following sentence? "Her desire for fame and fortune *atrophied* as her acting career blossomed." _____
30. A *pneometer* is _____.
31. *Histology* is the _____.
32. I was insulted when my friend said I had *cerebromalacia*. Why? _____
33. A *phagocyte* is a _____ that has the ability to _____ various substances.
34. A *leptorrhine* individual has a _____.
35. A *brachycephalic* individual has a _____.
36. The trademark Xerox was given to a process of _____ copying.
37. An *omophagous* animal _____ raw food.
38. The *pylorus* acts as a _____ between the stomach and duodenum.
39. The *lymphatic* system is composed mainly of _____.
40. *Myeloma* is a _____ that originates in the _____.
41. *Peptic* enzymes aid in the _____ of food.
42. I went to a *trichologist* when I wanted to change the color of my _____.
43. What is the etymological connection between the *jejunum* and *jeune* behavior? _____

44. *Nutrients* provide _____ for the body.
45. A *nocturnal* creature is active during the _____.
46. If the doctor in the emergency room yells "*stat!*" she needs help _____.
47. Someone suffering from *leukopenia* has a _____ white blood cells.

48. His bald *ovate*-shaped head reminded me of an _____.
49. When we describe an idea as *embryonic*, what do we mean? _____
50. When we describe someone's attitude as *insular*, what do we mean? _____

C. The Latin verb *digero* is a compound of *dis-* (apart) + *gero-gerere-gestum* (carry, bear). What are the literal meanings and current usages of the following words?

	<i>Literal Meaning</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
51. egest	_____	_____
52. congestion	_____	_____
53. gestation	_____	_____
54. gesture	_____	_____
55. suggestive	_____	_____
56. gesticulate	_____	_____
57. digest (noun)	_____	_____
58. ingest	_____	_____

D. Take a deep breath ...

What are the literal meanings and current usages of the following words?

	<i>Literal Meaning</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
59. respiration	_____	_____
60. expire	_____	_____
61. conspiracy	_____	_____
62. transpire	_____	_____
63. inspiration	_____	_____
64. aspiration	_____	_____

SCIENCE *and* MATHEMATICS



The Greek philosopher Socrates (469–399 BCE)

*Man is not taught by the gods to know things whole from the outset;
little by little advances are made with time and with trouble.*

XENOPHANES (sixth-century BCE philosopher)

ANCIENT AND MODERN SCIENCE

All mankind have an instinctive desire for knowledge.

ARISTOTLE, *Metaphysics*

Most of the vocabulary of modern science and technology is derived from Greek and Latin roots. Many of these terms are, of course, learned borrowings, since the ancient world’s concepts of, and postulates about, physical reality were really quite different from those of modern science. Nevertheless, the questions that the ancient Greeks and Romans asked about the nature of the world—how it worked and of what sort of material it was made of—determined the course of European scientific inquiry to the modern period. And the recognition that the Greeks and Romans were the primary source of the European intellectual tradition led the modern physical sciences to reach back to their classical roots in order to construct their specialized vocabularies. In addition, the use of Greek and Latin roots has allowed for the creation of a common scientific language that transcends linguistic barriers.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ars, artis	skill, art
episteme (ἐπιστήμη)	knowledge
experior-experiri-expertum	try, test
materia, materiae	matter; material
natura, naturae	nature
cf. nascor-nasci-natum	be born
physis (φύσις)	nature
postulo-postulare-postulatum	demand, require; claim
qualis, qualis	of what kind?
quantum, quanti	how much?
quot (indeclinable)	how many?
scio-scire-scitum	know
techne (τέχνη)	skill, art

THE BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES

Nature does not go by any hard or fast law.

THEOPHRASTUS (fourth-century BCE philosopher and scholar)

Biology is the study of life or living matter in all its forms. The system of classification of plants and animals that modern biology uses was devised by Carl van Linne

(Linnaeus), an eighteenth-century Swedish scientist who organized the varieties of plants and animals by giving each a double Latin name, the first word denoting the genus, the second, the species.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
bios (βίος)	life
genus, generis cf. genos (γένος)	birth, origin; offspring; type, kind family, race; class, kind
species, speciei cf. specio-specere	form, shape, appearance look at
phylon (φύλον)	race, tribe, class

Zoology

The fox knows many things, but the hedgehog knows one big thing.

ARCHILOCHUS (seventh-century BCE Greek poet)

Zoology is that branch of biology that studies the behavior, physiology, and classification of animals.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
zoon (ζῶον) cf. -zoon (singular) and -zoa (plural)	living thing in combining form, used as suffix in the formation of names of zoological groups
animal, animalis (cf. anima)	living being

<i>Animal</i>	<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Greek Word</i>
bear	ursus, ursi	arctos (ἄρκτος)
cat	felis, felis	ailuros (αἰλουρος)
cow	vacca, vaccae	bous (βοῦς) or tauros (ταῦρος)
dog	canis, canis	cyon, cynos (κύων)
horse	equus	hippos (ἵππος)
monkey	simia, simiae	pithecos (πίθηκος)

Ornithology

There is nothing better or more pleasant than to sprout wings.

ARISTOPHANES (fifth-century BCE comic playwright), *The Birds*

Ornithology is that branch of zoology that deals with the scientific study of birds.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ornis, ornithos (ὄρνις)	bird
avis, avis	bird
pteron (πτερόν)	wing
in combining form, <i>ptero-</i>	winged

Entomology

Some have said that bees partake of the divine mind and heavenly breath.

VERGIL (first-century BCE Roman poet), *Georgics*

Entomology is that branch of zoology that deals with the scientific study of insects. Entomologists estimate that there are at least 1 million species of insects. Although the classifications of insects have Latin- and Greek-based names, their common names are very often locally given. *Lepidoptera* is an order of insects, but one of the insects that belongs in this order is called *butterfly* in English, *papillon* in French, and *la mariposa* in Spanish.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
entomon (ἐντομον)	notched; cut into pieces
cf. tomos (τομός)	cutting
formica, formicae	ant
insectum, insecti	notched; cut into pieces
cf. seco–secare–sectum	cut
Lepidoptera	that order of insects that have “scaled wings”



**You failed your Latin exam!
But Sweetie, it's important to learn Latin:
All your friends' names have Latin roots...**

(www.cartoonstock.com)

Ichthyology

I shall be more silent than the fish.

LUCIAN (second-century CE Greek essayist)

Ichthyology is that branch of zoology that deals with the study of fish.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ichthys (ἰχθύς)	fish
piscis, piscis	fish
mare, maris	sea
Oceanos (Ὠκεανός)	Greek god who ruled the waters that flowed around the earth

Metaphors

The symbol of early Christianity was a fish. This sign was chosen because the Greek word *ichthys* was interpreted as an acronym for the following words: Ἰησοῦς Χριστὸς Θεοῦ Υἱὸς Σωτὴρ (*Iesūs Christos Theou Uios Soter* = Jesus Christ, the Son of God, Savior).

Herpetology

*Nearby are their three winged sisters,
the snake-haired Gorgons, hateful to men.
No mortal having seen them will still live.*

AESCHYLUS (fifth-century BCE playwright), *Prometheus Bound*

Herpetology is that branch of biology that deals with the study of reptiles and amphibians.

<i>Latin or Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
herpo (ἑρπω)	creep, crawl
serpo-serpere-serptum	creep, crawl
reptilis, reptilis	creeping, crawling; snake
dracon (δράκων)	snake, serpent; dragon

Botany

*In turn the lord who strikes from afar, Apollo, answered him:
Shaker of the earth, you would have me be as one without prudence
if I am to fight even you for the sake of insignificant
mortals, who are as leaves, and now flourish and grow warm
with life, and feed on what the ground gives, but then
fade away and are dead.*

HOMER, *Iliad*

Botany is that branch of biology that deals with the scientific study of plants.

<i>Latin or Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
anthos (ἄνθος)	flower, blossom
arbor, arboris	tree
botane (βοτάνη)	grass, herb
dendron (δένδρον)	tree
drys, dryos (δρῦς)	tree
flos, floris	flower
cf. floreο-florēre	flourish
folium, folii	leaf
phyllon (φύλλον)	leaf
radix, radicis	root

Resting on Her Laurels

The Greeks believed that certain places were inhabited by female spirits of nature called nymphs. Those who lived within trees were called dryads. There are many myths about nymphs, but perhaps the most famous is that of Daphne, who was turned into a laurel tree in order to prevent her capture by the god Apollo, who was pursuing her. The laurel was forever after sacred to Apollo.

daphne (δάφνη) = laurel tree

Genetics

*But she bore Chimaera, who breathed invincible fire, a terrible great creature, swift-footed and strong.
She had three heads: one of a fierce lion, one of a she-goat, and one of a powerful serpent.*

HESIOD (seventh-century BCE poet), *Theogony*

Genetics is that branch of biology that deals with heredity: the transmission of characteristics encoded in the chromosomes of cells from parent to offspring. Classical mythology records many examples of strange genetic hybrids and mutations. The Cretan queen Pasiphae gave birth to the Minotaur, a creature with the head of a bull and the body of a man; the Centaurs, who were half horse and half human, were the descendents of a coupling of the mortal Ixion and a cloud; Zeus changed himself and the mortal Leda into swans so they might escape the jealous eye of Hera, his wife. (Leda subsequently laid an egg, out of which hatched four mortal children.)

Modern genetics began much more modestly with the work of Gregor Mendel (1822–1884), an Austrian monk whose plant-breeding experiments led him to formulate the first principles of heredity. Although his laws have been demonstrated to be not universally true, Mendel's theories on dominant and recessive traits are the basis for some of today's high-tech genetic engineering. The discovery of the existence of DNA and the development of the techniques of gene manipulation have opened up many possibilities, some perhaps as strange as those described in ancient myth.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
dominor–dominari–dominatum	rule
cf. dominus, domini	master
genea (γενέα)	family, race
heres, heredis	heir
hybrida, hybridae	mixed breed
muto–mutare–mutatum	change
typos (τύπος)	mark, image; model, outline

He Looks Just Like You . . .

Although the Greeks envisioned hybrid creatures that combined the characteristics of humans and other animals, modern biology has explored the possibility of creating exact genetic replicas through the process of cloning.
clon (κλών) = offshoot, twig

What Are You Made Of?

The molecular form of DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), present in chromosomes and the carrier of genetic information, has been described as looking like two spirals wound around each other. Check your English dictionary to see how *chromosome* got its name. Can you see which Greek words are its roots?

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
helix (ἥλιξ)	spiral
oxy (ὄξύ)	sharp; clever

ASTRONOMY

A clever and attractive Thracian servant-girl is said to have mocked Thales (a sixth century BCE Greek philosopher) for falling into a well while he was observing the stars and looking upward.
PLATO, *Theatetus* (174A)

One branch of science, *astronomy*, does have its foundation in antiquity, since the heavenly bodies were studied with great interest by all the cultures of the ancient world. Many of the terms used by modern astronomers were employed first by the Greeks and Romans, although often within a different context. For example, when the modern astronomer uses the word *planet*, she means any heavenly body that shines by reflected light and revolves around a sun; but the ancient Greek definition of a planet was any one of the heavenly spheres that had apparent motion. These, then, included the sun and the moon, as well as Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn—but not Earth.

Some of the terminology of astronomy has its origins in Greek mythology. We call the system of stars to which our sun belongs the Milky Way because, traditionally, the Greeks told the story that it had been formed from drops of milk spilled from the breast of the goddess Hera as she nursed the infant hero Hercules. Hence, too, the word *galaxy*. In addition, many of the constellations are named for figures that appear in Greek and Roman myth.

In the ancient world, scientific astronomy and astrology coexisted quite happily. As we have already seen, many believed (then as now) in astrology, which maintained that the present and future could be revealed through the study of the activity of the planets and the constellations. According to traditional astrological theory, the interrelationship among the planets and the constellations, or the signs of the Zodiac, exerts a special influence over human affairs. And even if we do not believe in the validity of astrology, it has given us words that we normally do not associate with the stars: *disaster*, *dismal*, and *influenza*.

Although many ancient Greek philosophers and scientists rejected the premises of astrology, they did believe that the universe was perfect and unchanging, the visible symbol of a divine order; hence, they called it the *cosmos*. More popularly, the Greeks believed that the earth arose out of a great void, or emptiness, which they called *Chaos*.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
aster (ἄσστηρ) or astron (ἄστρον)	star
cf. Latin astrum, astri	star
stella, stellae	star
planao (πλανᾶω)	wander
> planetes (πλανήτης)	wandering, planet
helios (ἥλιος)	sun
sol, solis	sun
gala, galactos (γάλα)	milk
cf. Latin lac, lactis	milk
volvo-volvere-volutum	turn
cosmos (κόσμος)	order; decoration; universe
mundus, mundi	decoration; world, universe
chaos (χάος)	chaos; infinite space

Most ancient astronomers held to the view that all the planets revolved around the earth and that there was a band in the heavens that encompassed the apparent paths of the planets. This band was divided into twelve parts, each having the name of a constellation.

Signs of the Zodiac (Latin names)

Aries = Ram	Libra = Balance Scales
Taurus = Bull	Scorpio = Scorpion
Gemini = Twins	Sagittarius = Archer
Cancer = Crab	Capricorn = Goat-Horned
Leo = Lion	Aquarius = Water Carrier
Virgo = Maiden	Pisces = Fish

Cosmic Glue

Ancient philosophers believed that the heavenly bodies were composed of a fifth element and that this substance, which Aristotle called ether, was hidden in all matter. In medieval philosophical treatises this fifth element was called the *quinta essentia*. What is the current meaning of the word *quintessence*?

ether (αἰθήρ) = heaven, sky

(sum)-esse-futurum = be, exist

You'd Better Stay Home

The words *disaster*, *dismal*, and *influenza* all have their roots in the belief that the heavenly bodies have the power to affect our lives.

Disaster = *dis-* (apart, away from) + *astrum* (star)

Dismal. The Romans believed that certain days (*dies*) were unlucky (*malī*) because of the influence of the stars.

Influenza. Based on the belief that the disease was caused by the effect of the heavenly bodies on human beings. (The Italian *influenza* is derived from *influo-influere* = flow into.)

Look, Up in the Sky. It's a Bird . . .

The names of most of the planets in our solar system bear the names of the divinities whom the ancient Romans believed ruled over them. Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn had been observed by ancient astronomers, but it was not until the late eighteenth century that another celestial body, previously thought to be a comet, was recognized as a planet. After much argument, it was named Uranus, after the Greek god of the sky.

CHEMISTRY

Nature delights in nature, and nature conquers nature, and nature masters nature.

BOLOS (second-century BCE scientist), *Physica*

Modern chemistry and medieval alchemy have the same etymological root, but their aims are very different. The alchemist sought to transform “base” metals into gold, thereby transforming himself from a base being into one who was spiritually purified. The goal of at least some alchemical practitioners was to discover the philosopher’s stone, or the *elixir vitae*, the substance that was capable of effecting this transformation. Although many chemical compounds were discovered and many laboratory instruments that are still used were invented in this search, the modern science of chemistry asserts that it is much more modest in its goals: it is the study of the compositions and properties of substances and the reactions by which they are produced and changed.



Sarcophagus of a child (Kayseri Museum, Turkey)

The Elements

Although modern chemistry defines the term *element* to mean the basic substances that cannot be broken down into simpler ones by chemical means, the more common ancient view was that there were four elements that comprised the cosmos: earth, air, fire, and water.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Greek Combining Form</i>
elementum, elementi	element, first principle	
chemia (χημεία)	alloying of metals	chemo-
ge (γῆ)	earth	geo-
terra, terrae	earth	
aer (αἴρ)	air	aero-
aer, aeris	air	
aqua, aquae	water	
hydor, hydatos (ὕδωρ)	water	hydro-
in Greek compounds, ὕδρ-		
ignis, ignis	fire	
pyr, pyros (πῦρ)	fire	pyro-

Modern chemistry recognizes over 100 elements; they exist in the form of solids, liquids, and gases. In the periodic table, many elements are represented by abbreviations of their Latin names.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
hygron (ὕγρον)	liquid
in combining form, hygro-	moisture
liquidus, liquidus	liquid
cf. liquor, liqui	flow, melt
solidum, solidi	firm; whole, complete
stereon (στερεόν)	solid, firm
vapor, vaporis	gas, vapor

<i>Element</i>	<i>Latin Name</i>	<i>Greek Equivalent</i>
copper	cuprum, cupri (Cu)	chalcos (χαλκός)
gold	aurum, auri (Au)	chrysos (χρυσός)
iron	ferrum (Fe)	sideros (σίδηρος)
lead	plumbum (Pb)	molybdos (μόλυβδος)
mercury	argentum vivum (Hg)	hydrargyros (ὕδραργυρος)
silver	argentum, argenti (Ag)	argyros (ἄργυρος)

Other elements have names that are drawn from Greek and Roman mythology:

<i>Element</i>	<i>Character</i>
Helium	named for Helios, the Greek god of the sun
Neptunium	named for Neptune, the Roman god of the sea
Niobium	named for Niobe, whose many children were killed by Apollo, after she had boasted of having more children than Leto, the mother of the god. Overwhelmed by grief, she wept unceasingly, and turned to stone. But still she wept.
Plutonium	named for Pluto, Greek god of the underworld
Promethium	named for Prometheus, who stole fire from the gods and gave it to humans
Selenium	named for Selene, Greek goddess of the moon
Tantalum	named for Tantalus, who, thinking he could fool the gods, served them his son, Pelops, in a stew. The divinities were not fooled, or amused, and put him back together again. Tantalus was condemned to be eternally punished in the underworld.
Titanium	named for the Titans, the second generation of gods, who were overthrown by the Olympians, led by Zeus

Eponyms

Although many elements take their names from Greek and Latin roots, some are *eponymous*, e.g., fermium, einsteinium, curium, and mendelevium. From what Greek word is *eponymous* derived, and what does it mean?

Biochemistry

Sugar is sweet, and so are you . . .

Biochemistry is that branch of chemistry that deals with living matter. The human body has proved to be a highly sophisticated chemistry lab that is constantly breaking down organic compounds (nutrients) so they may be used by the body, which produces various enzymes that act as catalysts in this process. During digestion, for example, carbohydrates are converted into glucose, a sugar.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
lysis (λύσις)	untying; loosening
as learned borrowing, -lysis	breaking down, decomposition
zyme (ζύμη)	leaven; yeast
as learned borrowing, zymo-	leaven
fermentum, fermenti	leaven, yeast
cf. ferveo-fervēre	boil, rage
sacchar (σάκχαρ)	sugar
glycy (γλυκύ)	sweet
as learned borrowing, glyco- or gluco-	sugar

Mistaken Identity

Antoine Lavoisier, the French chemist who in 1775 identified the element necessary for combustion, mistakenly thought that it was present in all acids. Therefore, he named it *oxygen* (causing sharpness).

Please Don't Drink the Water

In modern chemistry, the term *aqua* means not only water, but liquid. Before you fill your glass, you should know the following deadly drinks:

aqua fortis (strong water) = nitric acid

aqua regia (royal water) = a mixture of hydrochloric and nitric acids that possesses the ability to dissolve gold

PHYSICS

Panta Rhei (“all things flow”)

HERACLITUS (sixth-century BCE Greek philosopher)

The modern science of physics deals with the properties, changes, and interactions of matter and energy; but to the ancient Greeks, physics was the inclusive study of natural science or natural philosophy. Modern physics includes the fields of mechanics, optics, and thermodynamics.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
physis (φύσις)	nature
ergon (ἔργον)	work
opus, operis	work
labor-laborari-laboratum	work (verb)
atomon (ἄτομον)	uncut
cf. -tomy, -ectomy	
nucleus, nuclei	kernel
electron (ἤλεκτρον)	amber
as learned borrowing, electro-	electric
neuter, neutri	neither
proton (πρῶτον)	first
moles, molis	mass
ion (ἰόν)	going (because ions move toward the electrode of the opposite charge)
pars, partis	part. What are the diminutive forms of <i>moles</i> and <i>pars</i> ?

Mechanics

The path up and path down are one and the same.

HERACLITUS (sixth-century BCE Greek philosopher)

Mechanics is that branch of physics that deals with motion and the action of force on bodies. The history of mechanics proves that not all science takes place in the laboratory. According to popular tradition, Galileo investigated the relative speed of falling bodies by dropping differing weights from the top of the Leaning Tower of Pisa; Isaac Newton is said to have been inspired to formulate his theories about the laws of gravity and motion after watching an apple fall from a tree. And then, of course, there was the third-century BCE Greek scientist Archimedes, who formulated the principle that a body immersed in fluid is buoyed up by a force equal to the weight

of the fluid displaced. He is said to have been lying in his bath when he made the discovery, and to have jumped up, naked, and run into the street, shouting “Eureka!” (εὕρηκα = I have found [it]!).

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
moveo-movēre-motum	move
mechane (μηχανή)	machine; contrivance
kinesis (κίνησις)	movement
gravis, gravis	heavy
velox, velocis	swift, rapid
inertia, inertiae	lack of skill; laziness
cf. ars, artis	skill

Optics

I seem to see two suns blazing in the heavens.

EURIPIDES (fifth-century BCE Athenian playwright), *The Bacchae*

Optics is that branch of physics that deals with the nature and properties of light and vision.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
opteo (ὀπτεύω)	see
video-vidēre-visum	see
phos, photos (φῶς)	light
in combining form, photo-	light
lux, lucis	light
lumen, luminis	light, source of light
chroma, chromatosis (χρῶμα)	color
in combining form, chromato-	color
pigmentum, pigmenti	color

<i>Color</i>	<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Greek Combining Form</i>
white	album, albi	leucos (λευκός)	leuco-
black	nigrum, nigri	melas, melanos (μέλας)	melano-
red	rubrum, rubri	erythros (ἐρυθρός)	erythro-
blue	caeruleum, caerulei	cyanos (κύανος)	cyano-
green	viridis, viridis	chloros (χλωρός)	chloro-

Thermodynamics

Thermodynamics is that branch of physics that deals with the relationship between heat and energy.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
thermon (θερμόν)	hot, warm
calor, caloris	warmth, heat
dynamis (δύναμις)	power, force
potentia, potentiae	power, force
chronos (χρόνος)	time
tempus, temporis	time

GEOLOGY

Earth first produced starry Sky, equal in size to herself, to cover her on all sides.
HESIOD, *Theogony* 126

Geology is the study of the structure of the earth’s crust and the formation of its various layers, including rock types and fossils. In ancient Greece, the earth was considered to be the oldest of all the deities; her name was Gaia, and she had given birth to the first generation of gods and to all good things in nature. We still call our planet Mother Earth.

<i>Latin or Greek word</i>	<i>English meaning</i>
Ge (Γῆ) or Gaia (Γαῖα)	Earth
in combining form, geo-	
terra, terrae	earth
lapis, lapidis	stone
lithos (λίθος)	stone
petros (πέτρος)	stone, rock
Vulcanus, Vulcani	The Roman blacksmith god who had his forge on Mt. Etna. There he made weapons for the gods and the heroes. <i>Volcanology</i> is the scientific study of volcanoes.

I'll Drink to That . . .

Like today, many stones were regarded as precious by the ancient Greeks, but some were thought to have special properties. The amethyst, for example, was believed to prevent intoxication.

methu (μέθυ) = wine

Paleontology

Paleontology is that branch of geology that deals with prehistoric life through the study of plant and animal fossils (the remains or traces of animal or plant life of earlier geological ages). For the nonspecialist, perhaps the most exciting fossils are those of the dinosaurs, the reptiles that lived during the Mesozoic period (220–265 million years ago). They, too, have a classical name.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
paleon (παλαιόν)	old
in combining form, paleo-	old
on,ontos (ὄν)	being
in combining form, onto-	being
fodio-fodere-fossum	dig up
dinon (δεινόν)	terrible, fearful
sauros (σαῦρος)	lizard

Jurassic Park, Revisited . . .

Perhaps the most frightening of the dinosaurs was the forty-five-foot-long *Tyrannosaurus rex*, a carnivore that had teeth that were a foot in length. What are the Greek and Latin roots of his name? His playmates included the brontosaurus and the pterodactyl. What were their special characteristics?

Jurassic, by the way, is just a synonym for *Mesozoic*, an age in the earth's history that occurred between 70 and 220 million years ago.

δεινός = terrible, dread

βροντή = thunder

GEOGRAPHY

But as to the fable that there are Antipodes, that is to say, men on the opposite side of the earth, where the sun rises when it sets to us, men who walk with their feet opposite ours, that is in no way credible.

ST. AUGUSTINE, *City of God*

Geography is the study of the physical and human landscapes on the surface of the earth, the location and distribution of its natural and cultural features, the processes that affect them over time and space, and the relationship and interaction between humans and their environment.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
mappa, mappae	napkin, cloth; map
charta, chartae	papyrus; paper
mons, montis	mountain
oros, oreos (ὄρος, ὄρεος)	mountain
lacus, lacūs	lake
limne (λίμνη)	lake
flumen, fluminis	river
cf. fluo-fluere = flow	
potamos (ποταμός)	river
insula, insulae	island
silva, silvae	forest



Gerhard Mercator, sixteenth century Flemish cartographer, who created a world map and is said to have coined the word "atlas" to describe a collection of maps

METEOROLOGY

*Let the forked curl of fire be hurled against me, let the air be stirred by thunder
and the convulsive blast of the savage winds.*

AESCHYLUS (fifth-century BCE Athenian playwright), *Prometheus Bound* (1043–1045)

Meteorology is the science that deals with the study of the atmosphere and atmospheric phenomena, including weather and climate.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
meteoron (μετέωρον)	raised from the ground; high in the air
clima, climatos (κλίμα)	region, zone
atmos (ἄτμός)	vapor
as learned borrowing, atmo-	air
sphera (σφαῖρα)	ball
nebula, nebulae	mist, vapor, fog
tempestas, tempestatis	season of the year; weather; storm
pluvia, pluviae	rain
glacies, glaciei	ice
baros (βάρος)	weight
as learned borrowing, baro-	pressure

It Was a Dark and Stormy Night . . .

Zeus, of course, was the god who sent thunder and lightning bolts. They were the weapons he used to show his displeasure and to punish those who had angered him. The Greeks believed that the winds were the children of Eos (Dawn) and Astraeus (“the Starry One”), a Titan.

“Astraeus and Dawn—god and goddess—lay together in love and Dawn gave birth to the violent winds; Zephyr, who brings fair weather; Boreas, who opens a path for the storm; and Notus. After the winds, Dawn gave birth to the stars—the morning star and the shining constellations.” Hesiod, *Theogony* 375–383

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
anemos (ἄνεμος)	wind
in combining form, anemo-	wind
ventus, venti	wind
Aurora, Aurorae	goddess of the dawn

The Winds

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
Boreas (Βορέας)	North Wind
Zephyros (Ζέφυρος)	West Wind
Notos (Νότος) or Auster, Austri	South Wind
Euros (Εὔρος)	East Wind
Typhon (Τυφῶν)	a mythological giant. His body, after he was killed by Zeus, became the source of all harmful winds. A dreadful creature, he had 100 fiery serpent heads
cyclos (κύκλος)	circle
as learned borrowing, cyclo-	cycle

The Seasons

In Greek mythology, the Seasons, or *Horae*, were thought to be the daughters of Zeus and the goddess Themis. It is their Roman names, however, that give us our English derivatives.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
aestas, aestatis	summer
autumnus, autumni	fall
tempus hibernum	winter
ver, veris, or tempus verum	spring

MATHEMATICS

To ancient Greek scientists, mathematics was considered to be a branch of philosophy because they believed that through mathematics one could come to understand all the physical and spiritual relationships among the constituent parts of the cosmos. Modern mathematics has a perhaps more limited goal: it is that branch of knowledge that deals with quantities, magnitudes, and forms; their measurements; and their interrelationships.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
manthano (μανθάνω)	learn
perfect stem = math-	
mathematica (μαθηματικά)	the things to be learned; mathematics
arithmos (ἄριθμός)	number
numerus, numeri	number
calculus, calculi	pebble; small stone
gonia (γωνία)	angle
cf. Latin genu, genū	knee
axioma (ἄξιωμα)	honor; decision; self-evident theorem
q.e.d. (quod erat demonstrandum)	that which was to be proved

Circular Reasoning

The mathematical term *pi*, which represents the ratio of the diameter of a circle to its circumference, was a symbol used by Greek mathematicians to represent the word περιφέρεια, or circumference. Can you figure out the literal meaning of this Greek word?

Cybernetics

In 1948, the noted mathematician Norbert Wiener coined the term *cybernetics* to describe the study of systems of control and communication within and between humans, machines, organizations, and society. Although cybernetics encompasses fields of research as diverse as the study of neural networks and chaos theory, it is most popularly associated with the development of computer technology and artificial intelligence.

The use of digital computers has introduced a host of new words to the English language, such as *megabyte* and *gigabyte*, as well as acronyms such as RAM, and has given new meanings to old words, such as *memory*, *virtual reality*, *digital*, and *flexibility*, that are formed from Greek and Latin roots.

Computers may have affected every aspect of modern existence, but like all machines, they have their limitations. Wouldn't it be nice if whenever we made an error in our lives all we had to do was hit the delete or backspace key and erase our mistake?

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
cybernetes (κυβερνήτης)	pilot, governor
puto-putare-putatum	consider, think
> computo-computare-computatum	sum up, calculate
gigas, gigantos (γίγας)	mighty, as learned borrowing, <i>giga-</i> = billion
megas (μεγὰς)	very large, as learned borrowing, <i>mega-</i> = million
deleo-delēre-deletum	destroy
erro-errare-erratum	wander, make a mistake
virtus, virtutis	excellence; worth. What is the root of this word?

ISLAMIC SCIENCE

The spread of Islam through North Africa, the Middle East, and Asia brought the medieval Muslim world in contact with the intellectual traditions of not only Greece and Rome but of ancient Mesopotamia, Persia, and India as well. Muslim scholars were very much interested in ancient Greek science and played a decisive role in preserving much of that knowledge, which otherwise would have been lost, through the translation of Greek scientific texts into Arabic. When they found a word that had no Arabic equivalent, they transliterated it and placed the Arabic definite article, *al-* in front. Hence, alchemy is a hybrid word; the article is Arabic, but the base of the word is Greek.

These scholars also did much original research, especially in the fields of astronomy and mathematics. Perhaps the greatest mathematician of the medieval period was the ninth-century Persian al-Khwarazmi, whose treatise on linear and quadratic equations, *The Compendium on Calculation by Completion and Balancing*, laid the cornerstone of that branch of mathematics called algebra (*al-jabr* = completion). In this work, al-Khwarazmi employed a Hindu system of number notation that we now call Arabic numerals. Translated into Latin in the twelfth century, the *Compendium* introduced into Europe the notational system that is universally used.

Al-Khwarazmi inadvertently gave his name to another mathematical term: *algorithm*, a set of ordered steps for solving a problem, is a corrupted form of al-Khwarazmi.



14: EXERCISES

NAME _____

Answer the question, or fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the underlined word or part of the word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning, check your unabridged dictionary.

Introduction

1. A *microbe* is a _____ form of _____.
2. I want to study *epistemology* because then I will know how I _____ anything.
3. What is the literal meaning of *technocracy*? _____ What is its current usage?

4. What is the literal meaning of *artifice*? _____ What is its current usage? _____
5. A *qualifying* exam determines _____ knowledge you possess.
6. An *omniscient* being _____.
7. What is the literal meaning of *expostulate*? _____ What is its current usage?

8. *Innate* characteristics are those that are _____ an individual.
9. In arithmetic, the *quotient* represents _____ times one quantity can be divided by another.
10. What is the literal meaning of *specious*? _____ What is a *specious* argument?

Biological Sciences

A. Botany

11. An *arboretum* is a place where _____ are cultivated.
12. A *portfolio* contains _____ that can be _____.

13. *Dendrochronology* is the _____ the rings of _____ to determine the _____ of past events.
14. The *philodendron* plant is so named because it _____ to wrap itself around _____.
15. If I describe his complexion as *florid*, what do I mean? _____ If I describe her prose as *florid*, what do I mean? _____
16. When a disease has been *eradicated*, it has been taken _____ by the _____.
17. He wanted to admire the stillness of the *sylvan* setting, but he was afraid to go into the _____.

B. Zoology

18. A person with a *bovine* appearance resembles a _____.
19. What animal races in a *hippodrome*? _____
20. The *pithecanthropus* displayed characteristics of both _____ and _____.
21. The chief characteristic of *reptiles* is that they _____.
22. *Formicide* is a substance that is used to _____.
23. A person who engages in the *piscatorial* art enjoys _____.
24. *Protozoa* are considered the _____ forms of _____.
25. What does it mean when we call someone a *rara avis*? _____
26. The *hippopotamus* got his name because it resembled a _____ who lives in a _____.
27. What is the literal meaning of *pterodactyl*? _____ How did it get its name? _____
28. His *feline* grace as he danced made him resemble a _____.
29. *Marine biology* is _____ that exists in the _____.
30. What is the difference between *etymology* and *entomology*? _____
31. What is a *toreador*? _____ What is the Latin root of this word? _____
32. If I say that the situation is *mutable*, I mean that it is subject to _____.

33. How did the word *genial* come to mean cheerful and pleasant? _____
34. When we call someone a *genius*, we mean he is very smart. How did the word come to have this present meaning? _____
35. To *dissect* a problem is to _____ it _____.

Astronomy

36. An event of *cosmic* significance affects the _____.
37. *Heliotropic* plants turn toward the _____.
38. During a *lunar* eclipse, the light of the _____ is obscured.
39. What is the difference between *cosmology* and *cosmetology*?

40. What is the literal meaning of *cosmopolitan*? _____ What is its current usage? _____
41. A *solarium* is a _____ we can enjoy the _____.
42. His *stellar* performance made him shine like a _____.
43. The *planets* seem to _____ through the heavens.
44. An *asteroid* is a heavenly body that _____.
45. *Lactose* is a _____ found in _____.
46. She told me, "I get up in the morning, I make my bed, I get on the subway and go to work. I hate my mundane existence." What was she complaining about? _____

Chemistry

47. The chief component of *ferric* oxide is _____.
48. What is the literal meaning of *stereotype*? _____ What is its current usage?

49. *Saccharine* is an artificial _____. If an individual is described as having a *saccharine* personality, what is she like? _____
50. An *aquifer* is a geologic formation that _____.

51. As I got off the airplane, I said, "Am I glad to be on *terra firma*!" Where was I? _____
52. Ian Fleming, the author of the James Bond novel *Goldfinger*, must have studied Latin as a boy since he gave this archvillain the first name *Auric*. What was the joke? _____
53. If you are suffering from *hyperglycemia*, you have _____ amount of _____ in your _____.
54. A *pyrogenic* substance is one that _____.
55. What is the meaning of the verb *tantalize*? _____ Why is the word based on the myth of Tantalus? If you do not know why, check a reference work on classical mythology.

Physics

56. When she said that the *synergy* of apple pie and ice cream was extraordinary, what did she mean? _____.
57. *Thermal* underwear helps you to keep _____.
58. The French word for money is *argent*. What should it be made of? _____
59. *Chlorophyll* makes the _____ of a plant _____.
60. To what other Latin word is the Latin word *materia* related? _____ How might the two words be connected? _____
61. The earliest Greek philosophers were called the *physicists* because they explored questions about _____.
62. A *hydraulic* pump is operated by _____.
63. A *dyne* is a measurement of _____.
64. A *calorie* is a measurement of _____.
65. His *hyperkinetic* activity made me crazy; he was constantly _____.
66. What is a *leukocyte*? _____ What is an *erythrocyte*? _____
67. Be careful that your car's *ignition* does not cause a _____.

68. According to its root, *fervor* should mean _____. What is its current usage?

69. *Albumen* is the _____ of an egg.
70. What color should a *rubric* be? _____ What was the original meaning of the word?
_____ What is its current usage? _____
71. A *monochromatic* picture is done in a _____.
72. If the doctor says you are *cyanotic*, you have turned _____.
73. An object that is *translucent* allows _____ to pass _____ it.
74. He was *neutral* in their argument, because he supported _____ point of view.
75. A *luminary* is a leading _____ in his profession.
76. Construct two sentences, each of which illustrates the possible different usages of the word *gravity*. Make sure that the sentences are grammatically correct.

77. I had hoped my novel would be my *magnum opus*, but all the reviewers said it was not a
_____.
78. What is the literal meaning of *extempore*? _____ What is its current usage?

79. What are two different usages of *nucleus*?
a. _____
b. _____
80. *Velocity* is the measure of the _____ of an object.

Geology and Geography

81. The geocentric theory posited that the _____ was at the center of the cosmos.
82. I am a *limnologist*, and so I am always jumping into _____.

83. If the doctor tells you that you are suffering from *renal calculi*, what do you have? _____

84. When the student called her teacher a *fossil*, what did she mean? _____
85. Medieval *cartographers* often attempted to construct a *mappa mundi*. What was their profession _____, and what were they trying to create? _____
86. What is the literal meaning of *monolith*? What are two different current usages of this word?

87. If you are *petrified*, you feel as if you have been _____ into _____. What are two different current usages of this word?

88. The *Paleolithic* period is more commonly known as the _____ Age.
89. What is the literal meaning of *megalith*? _____ What is its current usage?

90. What is the literal meaning of *lapidary*? _____ What do we mean if we say that someone writes in a *lapidary* style? _____

Meteorology

91. If I said it was a *pluvius* day, what would the weather be? _____
92. What is a more common name for the *Aurora Borealis*? _____ What is the literal meaning of its name? _____
93. His behavior might be described as *tempestuous*, because he was always _____.
94. The more common name for an *anemone* is a _____ flower.
95. Some animals *hibernate* in the _____.
96. When he asked me where we would *estivate*, I told him our _____ plans.
97. What continent was named the “*southern unknown land*” by nineteenth-century explorers?

98. An object that is *spherical* is shaped like a _____.
99. An idea that is *nebulous* is so vague that it resembles a _____.
100. If your teacher gives you a *glacial* look, he is acting in an _____ manner.

Mathematics

101. At the end of his logical argument, he stated confidently, “*q.e.d.*” What did he mean? _____

102. A *megaton* bomb carries an explosive force equal to _____ tons of TNT.
103. It is *axiomatic* that night follows day, i.e., it is a _____.
104. Your *reputation* reveals what others _____ about you.
105. What is the literal meaning of *virtual*? _____ What is its current usage?

106. The *deleterious* effects of drugs can _____ you.
107. In editing a text, what is the meaning of *dele*? _____
108. His erratic behavior caused everyone to fear that his mind was _____.

IT'S AN ACADEMIC QUESTION



Sappho, Greek poet. Sixth century BCE (Naples Museum, Italy)

Demetrius summoned Stilpo, the philosopher, and asked him whether anyone had robbed him of anything.

"No one," said Stilpo, "for I saw no one carrying away knowledge."

PLUTARCH (first-century CE essayist), *The Life of Demetrius*, ch. 59

GREEK AND ROMAN EDUCATION

Although students may think that attending school is an occupation as difficult and demanding as any job, and what is more, an absolute necessity for future success, most ancient Greeks and Romans viewed education and learning beyond the basic skills as a luxury available only to those who had money, and therefore the leisure, to devote themselves to study and the pursuit of knowledge.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
educō-educare-educatum cf. duco-ducere	train, rear; educate
pedia (παιδεία)	education; culture
encyklios pedia (ἐγκύκλιος)	“encircling” education; general knowledge
pedagogos (παιδαγωγός)	The slave who accompanied a child to school. The Romans applied the term <i>paedagogus</i> more generally to one who taught young children. What are the roots of this word?
scholē (σχολή)	leisure
ludus, ludi cf. ludo-ludere-lusum	sport, diversion, joke; school play; joke, mock
studeo-studēre	be eager for, be diligent

There were various forms of rudimentary instruction in classical Athens: reading and writing, poetry and music, and athletics—all for a fee. Although they never mandated universal compulsory education, many Greek cities gradually began to supervise education with the help of wealthy benefactors who provided endowments and paid teachers’ salaries. Pedagogy was grounded in memorization and recitation, and discipline was strict.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
rudis, rudis > erudio-erudire-eruditum	rough; unskilled polish; educate
tueor-tuēri-tuitum cf. tutor, tutoris	look after, guard guardian, protector
disco-discere > discipulus or discipula	learn pupil
and disciplina	instruction, learning
didacton (διδάκτον)	taught
docēo-docēre-doctum	show, teach
memoria, memoriae	memory

Higher Education

Once the fundamentals had been mastered, it was possible to continue one's education in a variety of subjects. Participation in public life demanded an ability to speak and argue well, and *sophistae*, men who claimed to teach not only the skills of persuasive rhetoric and oratory but also a practical wisdom, often commanded large fees. Education thus came to be seen as a pragmatic means of producing good citizens and promoting cultural traditions. Not everyone approved of the sophists' teaching methods or their goals. Plato's denunciation of this kind of instruction, in which "the weaker argument is made to seem the stronger," gave the term "sophist" the pejorative meaning it has today.

At Plato's school, the Academy, and at the Lyceum of Aristotle, advanced instruction was given in philosophy, mathematics, and science. The curriculum of the liberal arts, the product of the faculty of these institutions as well as the sophists, became the foundation of higher learning in Europe, and forms the basis of education in the modern college and university. Of course, it wasn't always just seminars and lectures and a lot of hard work; campus life clearly held some pleasures, most notably *symposia*.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
oro-orare-oratum	speak; pray
sophon (σοφόν)	wise, clever
> sophistes (σοφιστής)	expert, teacher
pragma, pragmatos (πράγμα)	matter, affair
cf. praxis (πράξις)	business, transaction
curro-currere-cursum	run
> curriculum, curricula	running, race; racecourse
semen, seminis	seed; origin
> seminarium, seminarii	garden, nursery
for-fari-faturn	speak
facultas, facultatis	skill, ability. What is the Latin root of this word?
campus, campi	plain, field
symposion (συμπόσιον)	drinking party

It's All Academic . . .

The school founded by Plato was called the Academy. Today, the adjective *academic* is commonly used to mean scholarly or learned, but without practical application.

But Not Too Academic

In ancient Greece, the symposium was a gathering of men who were entertained by poets and musicians, as well as with wine. At the one described by Plato in his dialogue, *The Symposium*, the participants, including Socrates, try to define the meaning of *eros*.

What Were You Saying?

There are of course, many kinds of speeches; some may be flattering:

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
encomion (ἐγκώμιον)	a speech of praise
eulogia (εὐλογία)	fine language
panegyrikon (πανηγυρικόν)	festive; flattering

But not all speech, of course, is complimentary. When Philip of Macedon, the father of Alexander the Great, tried to rally the Greek cities to his cause, the Athenian orator Demosthenes delivered a series of stinging attacks against him. These *diatribes* were so harsh that the term *philippic* is now applied to any violent and bitter speech against an individual.

diatribe (διατριβή)	a way of spending time; learned discussion; criticism. Its modern usage is pejorative: a harsh and abusive verbal attack.
---------------------	---

From Greek into Latin

Some Greek and Latin nouns retain their original plural endings in English. Greek words that were adopted by the Romans often have Latin endings in English, e.g.,

- Greek *symposion* > Latin *symposium* (sing.); *symposia* (plur.)
- Greek *encomion* > Latin *encomium* (sing.); *encomia* (plur.)
- Latin *colloquium* (sing.); *colloquia* (plur.)

The Liberal Arts

In the medieval universities of Europe, the liberal arts were divided into two classes of study: the *quadrivium* and the *trivium*. The *quadrivium* consisted of arithmetic, astronomy, geometry, and music; the *trivium* comprised grammar, rhetoric, and dialectic. What Latin words are at the root of these courses of study?

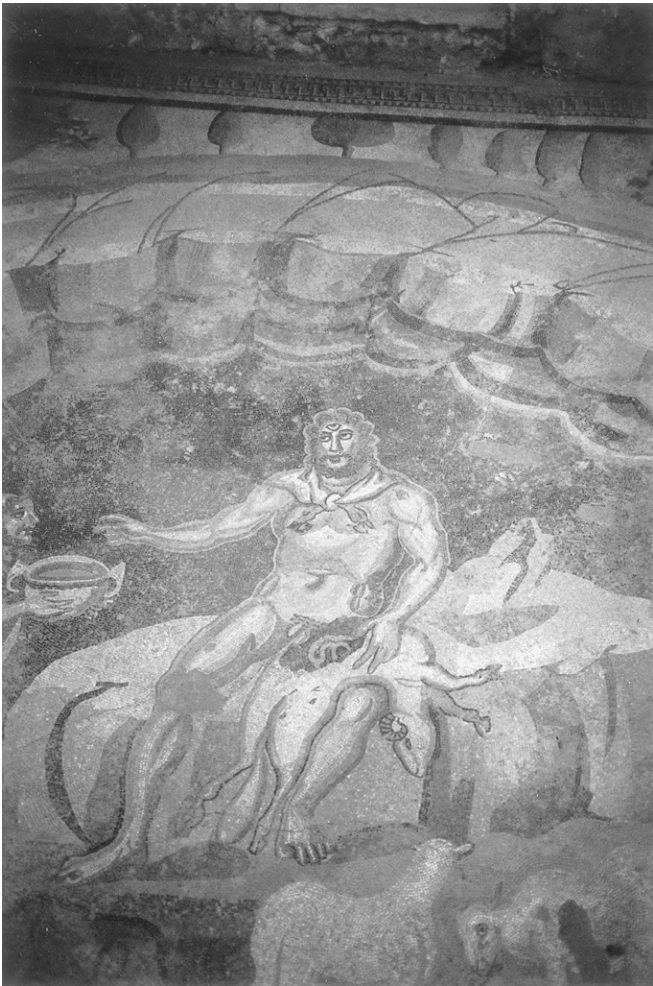
The Key to Success

The culture of ancient Greece was held in such high regard that when the first American fraternity was founded in 1776, it took its name, Phi Beta Kappa, from the initial letters of the Greek phrase, φιλοσοφία βίου κυβερνήτης: *Philosophy is the Guide of Life*. It's a useful thought.

BOOKS AND LIBRARIES

The first organized research library was said to have been established by Aristotle at the Lyceum, but certainly the largest and most famous library in antiquity was founded in the third century BCE at Alexandria in Egypt. It is claimed by contemporary sources that it contained 700,000 volumes. Associated with the library was the museum, an institute for advanced research under the aegis of the government, where scholars cataloged and edited much of the canon of ancient Greek literature.

The production of books was a difficult and laborious task, since each text had to be copied by hand, and errors were inevitable. Most volumes were written on rolls of papyrus, although parchment, made from treated animal skins, was also used. The *codex*, forerunner of the modern book, with bound pages, was not in common use until the second century CE. Now, of course, with the use of computers and the electronic transmission, storage, and retrieval of information, some people believe that printed books may go the way of the feather pen and inkwell.



Mosaic of a Cyclops. Fourth century CE (Piazza Amerina, Sicily)

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
biblion (βιβλίον)	book
> bibliotheca (βιβλιοθήκη)	library
liber, libri	book
> librarium, librarii	library
aegis (ἀιγίς)	shield, protection
volumen, voluminis	roll, book
cf. volvo-volvere	turn, roll
papyrus (πάπυρος)	Egyptian papyrus plant, from whose fiber paper was made
codex, codicis	block of wood; tablet, book
canon (κανών)	rule; standard

Going Around in Circles

Research, the foundation of all good scholarship, is derived from the Latin verb *circo-cir-care* = to go around.

Stop, Thief!

The root of the word *plagiarism* reveals just how serious a crime it is.
plagio-plagiare-plagiatum = steal, kidnap

Talking May Be Hazardous to Your Mental Health

We have already seen that there are a great many Latin verbs that mean “to speak.” Some of them produce derivative nouns and adjectives that go beyond plain talking. Which words that have to do with speech can you find in the following sentence?
“After taking elocution lessons, what fatal pronouncement did the loquacious oracle vocalize when it predicted your future?”

Get to the Point

Although many students find it hard to believe, punctuation is important for understanding the meaning of a sentence. Ancient Greek and Latin texts not only had no punctuation, but no spaces between words. These marks were invented by the librarians in Alexandria in the third century BCE, but it was not until the ninth century CE that they were used with any regularity. So consider yourself lucky; otherwise, you might get the wrong idea from the following sentence: “As we sat down to eat my father made a speech.”

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
sententia, sententiae cf. sentio-sentire = feel	opinion
pungo-pungere-punctum	pierce, prick; sting, bite
periodos (περίοδος)	going around, circuit
comma (κόμμα)	that which is cut off
colon (κῶλον)	member; part of a clause
hyphen (ὑφέν)	in one; as a single word
apostrophe (ἀποστροφή)	turning back or away from
parenthesis (παρένθεσις)	insertion; injection



15: EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. Answer the following questions, or fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning, check your unabridged dictionary.

1. Our *illusions* help us _____ with reality.
2. A good *educator* should _____ knowledge from her *students* who are, of course, _____ to learn.
3. A *scholar* needs _____ to do *research*, or else he will _____ in confusion.
4. What are two different current usages of *rude*?

5. An *autodidact* is _____.
6. His *disciples* wanted to _____ what he had to say.
7. The first question a *pragmatist* asks is, "What can I _____?"
8. What is a *rhetorical* question? _____ Can you give an example?

9. He was employing so many deceptive and even false arguments that everyone accused him of _____.
10. The speaker delivered an *encomium* to the mayor because he wished to _____ her.
11. His eyes _____ over the newspaper as he gave the headlines a *cursory* glance.
12. When the criminal confessed, he _____ what he had done.
13. What are two different usages of *faculty*?

14. If scholars got at the root of *symposium*, they would do more _____ than talking when they met.
15. Freud was a *seminal* figure in modern psychology because his work was the _____ for future work in the field.
16. *Illegible* writing _____.
17. When Roman law was *codified*, it was _____ into a _____.
18. What are the Spanish and French words for *library*?

19. *Noncanonical* works are those that lie outside the _____ of what is acceptable.
20. His sentences were so *convoluted* that they were all _____.
21. A *fabulous* party is worth _____ about.
22. We all wish we had a *tutelary* spirit who would _____ us from harm.
23. He had only a *rudimentary* education, so he was _____ in reading.
24. Her *encyclopedic* memory contained all kinds of _____.
25. His behavior was so *ludicrous* that we thought he was _____.
26. What are two different usages of *oratory*?

27. The project was done under the *aegis* of the mayor's office. What does *aegis* mean in this context? _____
28. What is the current usage of the word *voluminous*? _____ Can you figure out how it got this meaning? _____

29. What are two different usages of *tuition*?

How are these usages related? _____

30. It was difficult to _____ of him, even after his death; but the minister delivered a moving *eulogy*.

31. A *plagiarist* is _____ someone else's ideas or words.

32. What is the difference in meaning between *famous* and *infamous*? _____

33. Even as I stood up to speak, I still couldn't make up my mind: should I flatter the mayor with a _____ or harshly attack him in a _____?

34. The words *punctuation* and *punctual* have the same Latin root but very different meanings. Do an etymological "search" to see how each word evolved into its present meaning.

punctuation _____

punctual _____

B. Playing Around

Construct sentences using the following words. Your sentences need to indicate that you know the meaning of the word.

35. collusion _____

36. delusion _____

37. prelude _____

38. interlude _____

39. allusion _____

C. Here are some more words, some of them quite elegant, that come into English unchanged from either Greek or Latin. Use your unabridged dictionary to find the original meanings and current usages of the following words:

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Greek or Latin Meaning</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
40. opprobrium	_____	_____
41. veto	_____	_____
42. eureka	_____	_____
43. kudos	_____	_____
44. memento	_____	_____
45. scintilla	_____	_____
46. lacuna	_____	_____
47. enigma	_____	_____
48. stigma	_____	_____
49. item	_____	_____
50. verbatim	_____	_____
51. hiatus	_____	_____
52. interim	_____	_____

THE CLASSICAL INFLUENCE



Parthenon of Athens, the temple dedicated to Athena,
protecting goddess of the city of Athens

*We Athenians cultivate a taste for the beautiful with
moderation and we love knowledge without softness.*

PERICLES *Funeral Oration* (430 BCE)

EUROPE AND THE CLASSICAL HERITAGE

Western European culture has seen itself as the intellectual heir, in both form and content, of the artistic traditions of Greece and Rome. Although a great variety of non-European cultural forces have also influenced the development of European thought, many of the European traditions of creative expression, from the plastic and decorative arts to architecture and literature, can trace their ancestry back to the monumental legacy of the civilizations of the classical world.

THE FINE ARTS

The Greek exploration of spiritual and intellectual expression through the plastic arts established the forms and styles that were to become the reference points for all subsequent activity in these creative fields in classical antiquity. It was an influence that survived the end of the classical world. The European fascination with the human form, especially as expressed in sculpture, as well as the ideals of harmony and proportion that also provide the basis of classical architecture, perhaps have their origins in the Greek search for rationality, order, and measure in the visible world.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
creo-creare-creatum	bring forth, make
> cresco-crescere-cretum	arise, become visible
decus, decoris	ornament, splendor, honor; dignity
> decorus, -a, -um	suitable, proper
mnema (μνημα)	monument, remembrance
ratio, rationis	plan, thought; order



Cithara player. Fifth-century BCE vase painting (Antikensammlungen, Munich)

Studying the Classics

The term classical is usually applied to Greek art of the fifth and fourth centuries BCE. More generally, it is used to describe the civilization of Greek and Roman antiquity, and has come to represent a particular artistic or architectural style modeled on Greek and Roman prototypes.

classis = type, class

> *classicus* = belonging to a class > belonging to the highest class

Pots and Pans

Greek pottery was valued both for its utility and its beauty. Often, elaborately decorated with scenes or figures from Greek myth, these products—ranging from storage jars to drinking cups—found their way all around the Mediterranean world.

ceramia (κεραμεία) = pottery

CITY PLANNING

The Romans, whose aesthetic tastes were in part influenced by Greek models, were innovators as well, especially in the realm of both public and private architecture and city planning.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
urbs, urbis	city, town
rus, ruris	countryside
porta, portae	city gate
agora (ἀγορά)	marketplace; place of assembly
forum, fori	outside space; marketplace; place of assembly
circus, circi	circle
aedes, aedis	room
> aedificium, aedificii	building. What Latin verb can you see in this word?
domus, domi	house
camera, camerae	vault; private room
cella, cellae	small room
fenestra, fenestrae	window
murus, muri	wall
cubiculum, cubiculi	bedroom
cf. cubo–cubare–cubitum ¹	lie down
Palatium, Palatii	one of the seven hills of Rome, on which the Emperor Augustus built his residence

Going Places

In order to unite the various provinces of an empire that extended from Britain to Mesopotamia, from the Danube to North Africa, Rome built a remarkable system of roads whose remains can be seen even today. The Emperor Augustus erected the “Golden Milestone” in the Roman Forum, and all distances within the empire were measured from this point, and it was from here that all the major roads within the empire diverged. Thus we have the expression, “all roads lead to Rome.” What does this phrase now mean?

<i>Latin or Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
via, viae	street, road, way
iter, itineris	road, route; journey

1. In compounds, *cubo* often takes the form *-cumbo*, *cumbere*, *-cubitum*.

LITERATURE

The ancient Greeks created enduring models for many of the genres of later European literature. Poetry in all its forms, as well as tragedy, comedy, and historiography, all can trace their roots to the classical literary traditions.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
augeo-augēre-auctum > auctor, auctoris	enlarge; increase one who increases; originator
drama (δρᾶμα)	doing
historia (ἱστορία)	inquiry
hymnos (ῥυμνος)	song in praise of a deity
littera, litterae	letter; literature (in <i>plur.</i>)
paean (παῖον)	song of thanksgiving to Apollo, god of healing



Mask of a tragic actor

THEATER

Although its exact origins are a matter of debate, it is clear that Greek theater had its beginnings in religious ritual: tragedies and comedies were performed in honor of Dionysus, the god of wine and fertility, who promised his worshippers release from the constraints of ordinary life. Attending the festival of Dionysus, at which the plays were performed, was a religious, civic, and perhaps psychological, obligation. The Greek philosopher Aristotle, in his definition of the function of tragedy, said that it was the representation (*mimesis*) of an action that, by means of arousing “pity and fear” in the individual, attempted to purge him of these emotions.

The production of the tragedies, which for the most part drew their themes and plots from Greek myth, was part of a competition subsidized by the wealthiest citizens, who paid the costs, including the training of the dramatic chorus, as a civic obligation. The judges, chosen by lot in order to prevent bribery, seem to have based their awards on audience applause.

In its most developed form, the cast consisted of three actors (female roles were played by men) and the members of the chorus. Originally, the author also acted in the production of his work; eventually the state provided the leading actor. The playwright Sophocles (496–406 BCE), author of *Oedipus* and *Antigone*, is said to have been a skilled musician and graceful dancer as well, who performed in several of his own dramas.

Not all Greek theater was serious and solemn. Comedy, with its sometimes fantastic plots, took pleasure in being raucous and often lewd, and in poking fun at popular religious beliefs and social relationships, as well as at prominent Athenian citizens, politicians, artists, and intellectuals.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
comos (κῶμος)	revel; merry-making
> comoedia (κωμῳδία)	revel-song; comedy
catharsis (κάθαρσις)	cleansing; purification
choreuo (χορεύω)	dance in a circle
character (χαρακτήρ)	mark, stamp; special type
clamo-clamare-calamatum	shout, call out
criticon (κριτικόν)	able to judge
> hypocrites (ὑποκριτής)	actor
cf. crisis (κρίσις)	decision; trial; dispute
histrion, histrionis	actor
mimesis (μίμησις)	representation; imitation
orchestra (ὄρχήστρα)	place where the chorus danced
plaudo-plaudere-plausum	clap, strike
in compounds, -plodo, -plodere, -plosum	
protagonists (πρωταγωνιστής)	leading actor
scene (σκηνή)	tent; stage wall; stage backdrop
theaomai (θεάομαι)	look at, see
> theatron (θέατρον)	theater
tragoedia (τραγωδία)	literally, goat-song; tragedy

The Muses

Traditionally, every artist claimed that he was inspired by the Muses, the divine daughters of Zeus and the goddess Mnemosyne (Memory). The nine sisters each had a particular sphere of creative activity over which she presided.

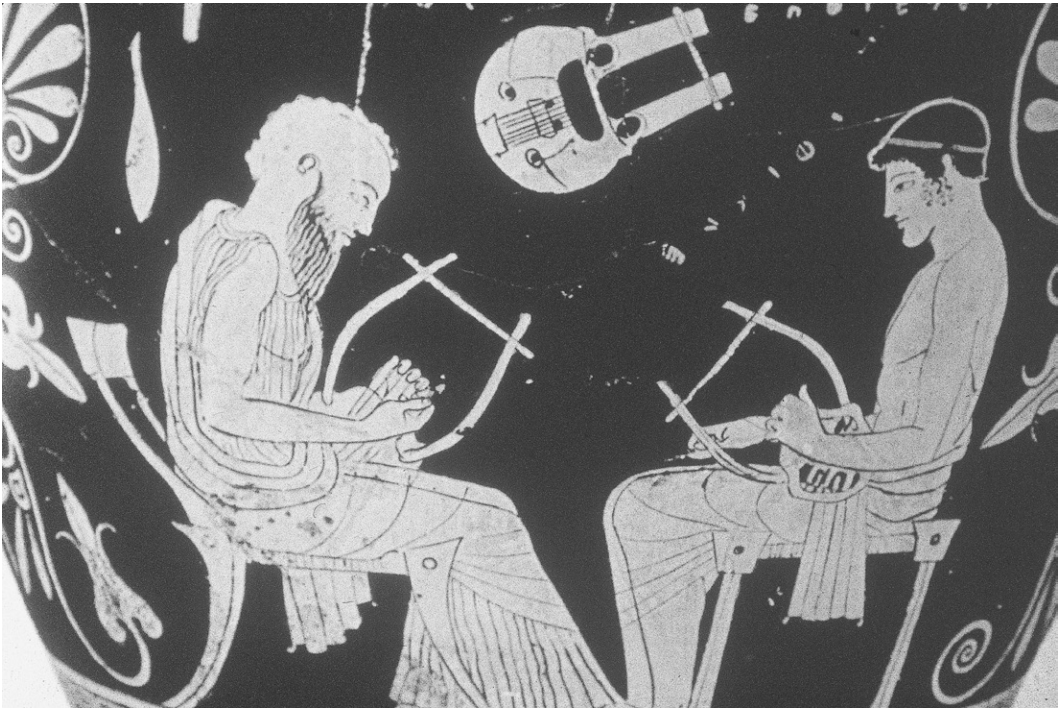
musike (μουσική) art, letters; accomplishment

<i>Goddess</i>	<i>Artistic or Intellectual Realm</i>
Calliope	Epic poetry
Clio	History
Erato	Lyric poetry
Euterpe	Flute playing
Melpomene	Tragedy
Polyhymnia	Sacred song
Terpsichore	Dance
Thalia	Comedy
Urania	Astronomy

MUSIC

Much of musical terminology and many musical instruments—woodwinds, strings, and percussion—have classical roots.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
musice (μουσική)	belonging to the Muses
sono-sonare-sonitum	sound
melodia (μελωδία)	song
canto-cantare-cantatum	sing
organon (ὄργανον)	instrument
stringo-stringere-strictum	draw tight, bind; cut off
percutio-percutere-percussum	strike
cornu, cornūs	horn
cymbalon (κύμβαλον)	cymbal
tympanon (τύμπανον)	drum
cithara (κιθάρα)	lyre, lute
tuba, tubae	trumpet



Linus, music teacher of the Greek hero Heracles. The Greek hero was said to have killed Linus after he criticized his student's playing. (Staatliches Museum, Schwerin, Germany)

Practice, Practice, Practice

If you play an instrument, you are familiar with the terms that are used to describe the various *tempi*, or rates of speed in a musical composition. Almost all of these terms are Italian, since in the seventeenth century, Italian composers were the first to use a system of notation to indicate the speed at which a piece was to be played. Italian is, of course, a direct descendant of Latin.

<i>Italian Term</i>	<i>Musical Meaning</i>	<i>Latin Root</i>
allegro	quickly	alacer, alacris = quick, brisk
vivace	lively (faster than allegro)	vivax, vivacis = brisk, lively
cf. vivo-vivere = live		
presto	very quickly	praesto (adv.) = available, ready
forte	loudly	fortis, fortis = strong, brave
piano	softly	planus, plani = even, level

Tempi is the plural form of the Italian noun *tempo*. What is its Latin root?

Let's Hear It for the Maestro

The shout of *encore*, meaning more, or again, is derived from the Latin phrase *in hanc horam* (at this time; still, yet). What is the derivation of *maestro*?

From A to Z

The first note on the musical scale in the medieval period was designated by the Greek letter *gamma*, while the final note was called *ut*. Thus, the word *gamut*, a contraction of *gamma* and *ut*, was used to denote the entire scale of tones. Today, the word is used to mean the entire range of any area, as in the phrase, "his emotions ran the gamut from grief to rage."

ATHLETICS, COMPETITION, AND EXCELLENCE

Theater was not the only form of entertainment available to the Greeks and Romans, and the competitive spirit extended into the realm of physical activity. Wrestling, jumping, discus and javelin throwing, and racing were all part of public contests sponsored by the state or by wealthy citizens. Heracles, the mythical Greek hero known for his remarkable strength, was credited with founding the Olympic games; and although they were dedicated to Zeus, the contests in the stadium provided an area for the demonstration of human excellence. The entrants competed on behalf of their cities, and victors often received the same kind of public prestige (and rewards) as modern athletes.



Floor mosaic, depicting a gladiatorial contest, from a second century CE Roman villa in Nennig, Germany

Sometimes, the original purpose of the contest seems to have been lost. Roman gladiatorial combat, for example, probably had begun as part of funeral ritual, but by the time of the emperors, sponsorship of these violent spectacles had become merely a means for politicians to win popular support and to keep the populace happy.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
agon (ἄγών)	contest, struggle
arena, arenae	sand; arena, place for contests
athlos (ἄθλος)	contest
discos (δίσκος)	plate, disc
dromos (δρόμος)	running
gladius, gladii	sword
gymnazo (γυμνάζω)	exercise naked, train
peto-petere-petitum	seek, ask; strive for
prestigia, prestigiarum	delusion, deception. Check your dictionary to see how the word took on a positive meaning
pugno-pugnare-pugnatum	fight
stadion (στάδιον)	race course
sthenos (σθένος)	strength
testor-testari-testatum	show, prove; witness

Leisure, the Freedom from Activity, Is Legal

The etymology of the word *leisure* is the Latin *licet* = it is permitted.

Setting a Record

According to Greek tradition, when the Athenians defeated the Persians at the Battle of Marathon in 490 BCE, the runner Pheidippides raced the twenty-six miles back to Athens to announce the good news. *Marathon* now denotes any long race, while the ending *-thon* has been used to coin many new words, all having the sense of endurance, such as telethon or walkathon.

Approval Ratings

When a fighter fell in the arena, Roman spectators often expressed their feelings. Traditionally, the gesture of *thumbs up* indicated that the gladiator should be spared by his opponent; *thumbs down* meant that the victor should show no mercy. The Roman satirist Juvenal declared that the citizens of Rome had become so decadent that they cared only for *panem et circenses*, “bread and circuses,” that is, free food and public entertainment, provided by ambitious politicians eager to buy votes.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ambitio, ambitionis	going around; canvassing for votes; desire for office
cado-cadere-casum	fall
in compounds, -cido, -cidere-cisum	
panis, panis	bread
votum, voti	vow, oath

Some New Beginnings

You have already learned (p. 50) that *-sco* indicates what is called an inceptive verb, meaning that the action has just begun, or is continuing. Here are a few more verbs that belong in this category:

<i>Latin Inceptive Form</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
effervesco-effervescere	begin to boil, foam, bubble
adolesco-adolescere-adultum	grow up
coalesco-coalescere-coalitum	grow together, become one
obsolesco-obsolescere-obsoletum	wear out, decay; go out of use



Monumental head from the tomb of Antiochus, first-century BCE ruler of Commagene, on Mt. Taurus in Turkey



16: EXERCISES

NAME _____

Answer each question or fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning, check your unabridged dictionary.

A. Fine Arts and City Planning

1. A *domesticated* animal should live in your _____.
2. By looking at the *itinerary*, I knew which _____ he had taken.
3. What is the difference in meaning between *urban* and *urbane*?

4. Their *indecorous* behavior was _____ at all _____ for the occasion.
5. What is the shape of London's Piccadilly *Circus*? _____
6. I don't know why my boss was so angry when she found me napping in my *cubicle*; after all, it was designed for _____.
7. When he threatened to *defenestrate* me, I moved away _____ the _____.
8. As I saw the *portals* close, I knew I'd never get beyond those _____.
9. I went to see the *murals* he had painted, but they had torn down the _____.
10. What activity took place in the Roman *Forum* that gives the word its current usage?

11. The house had a *rustic* charm that can only be found in the _____.
12. The legislative branch of the U.S. government is *bicameral*. That means that it has _____
_____.
13. Although she gave her *rationale* for acting this way, I still don't understand her _____.

14. If it is *incumbent* upon you to do a task, the responsibility _____ you. What is another current usage of this word? _____
15. What Latin word is the etymological connection between *increase* and *crescent*? _____ What is the current usage of each word?
- a. _____
- b. _____
16. A *mnemonic* device helps you _____ something.
17. I was pleased to get a pay *increment*, because that meant my salary would _____.
18. When my mother *reiterated* her instructions for the tenth time, I told her she was going _____ over the same _____ again and again.
19. The restrictions placed on the speakers imposed by the chairman _____ further debate.
20. Their *collaboration* was a failure, because they were unable to _____.
21. I found him in a *recumbent* position. What was he doing? _____
22. The words *edifice* and *edification* have the same root but very different meanings. Check your dictionary to see if you can figure out the history of both words.

B. Literature, Theater, Music

23. It was clear he had won *plaudits* for his performance: everyone was _____ him.
24. Everyone's *character* has its own particular _____.
25. The *choreographer* _____ for a performance.
26. When I heard the *clamor* in the street, I looked to see who was _____.
27. He took a second job to *augment* his wages because he needed to _____ his income.
28. We had reached a *crisis*, and it was time to make a _____.
29. Paying his debts was a *cathartic* experience, because it _____ him of guilt.
30. I knew he was a *hypocrite*, only _____ that he was sorry.
31. When the witness *attested* to the evidence he _____ its truth.

32. *Cliometrics* is that branch of the study of _____ that attempts to _____ economic or social facts.
33. If *orchestra* had kept its original meaning, what would happen there? _____
34. *Critics* are supposed to be able to _____ works of art.
35. I suffered a *concussion* when I was _____ on the head.
36. A *cantata* is a musical composition that is meant to be _____.
37. What is a *cornucopia*? _____. Construct a sentence using the word.

38. I took *drastic* measures because it was clearly necessary to _____ something.
39. If I *agonize* over a decision, I am _____ to decide what to do.
40. I started to scream in pain, but my mother said, "Stop the *histrionics*; I know you're only _____."
41. As the *pantomime* watched me, he _____ my actions.
42. A *sonogram* is _____ produced by _____ waves.
43. She had *terpsichorean* aspirations, but unfortunately, she couldn't _____.
44. She wasn't very imaginative: her original thoughts ran the _____ from A to B.
45. When I asked him to *clarify* his idea, he tried to _____ it _____.
46. The ear's *tympanic* membrane acts as a _____.
47. She _____ an *exclamation* of disgust.
48. In the sentence, "he took what I said literally," what is the present meaning of *literally*?

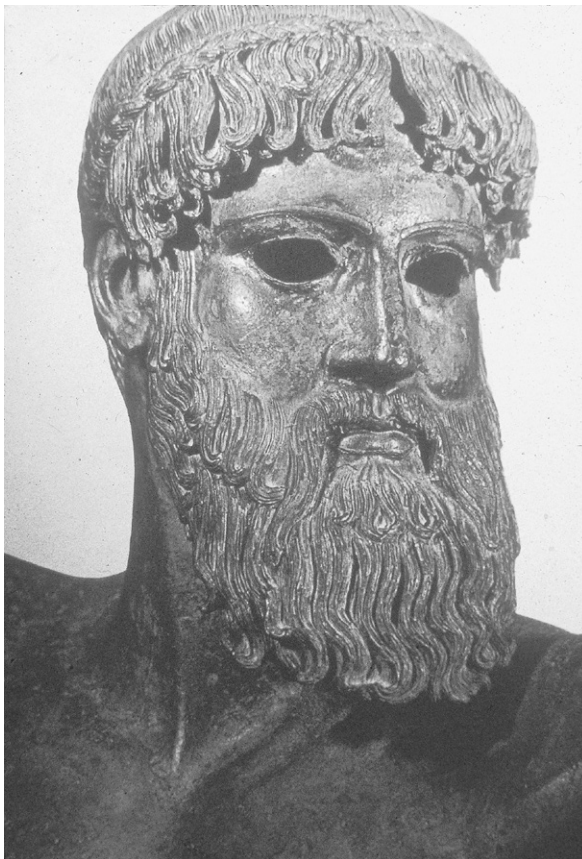
49. What kind of entertainment should be shown at a theater named the *Thalia*? _____
50. Although the teacher said, "Finish your homework with *alacrity*," I did not do it _____.
51. She showed great *fortitude* under stress; I would not have been so _____.
52. After the accident, he suffered from *amnesia*, and had _____ of what had happened.
53. What is the etymology of *viaduct*? _____ What is it? _____

C. Athletics and Contests

54. An *invincible* enemy is _____.
55. A *votive* offering is one made in fulfillment of a _____.
56. One's last will and *testament* is a document that has been _____.
57. A remark that *impugns* your reputation _____ it.
58. If you suffer from *myasthenia*, what is the matter? _____
59. A *gymnasium* is a _____ people _____.
60. He was *casual* in his approach to life. He took things as they _____.
61. What is a *palindrome*? _____ Use your unabridged dictionary to find the meaning. What are the roots of this word? _____
62. A *pugnacious* individual is always _____ a desire for _____.
63. *Calisthenics* are a means of increasing bodily _____.
64. A *petition* is a means of _____ for something.
65. The chief weapon of a *gladiator* was his _____.
66. His political *ambitions* were fueled by a _____.
67. The original meaning of the word *arena* was ground covered with _____. What are two current English usages of this word?

68. She entered the *pentathlon*, although she wasn't sure she could finish all _____.
69. *Syndrome* is a medical term for a group of complaints that _____.
70. His *effervescent* personality _____ to remind me of a _____ champagne.
71. Physically, he was an *adult*, but it was clear to everyone that he had never _____.
72. Although we tried to form a *coalition*, our ideas never seemed to _____.
73. That technology is rapidly becoming *obsolescent*, and will soon _____.

MYTH, RELIGION, *and* PHILOSOPHY



Head of bronze statue of Zeus or Poseidon,
found at Artemision (National Museum, Athens)

*Homer and Hesiod have attributed to the gods all things that are a shame
and a reproach among men: stealing, adultery and deceiving one another.*

XENOPHANES (sixth-century BCE philosopher)

GREEK AND ROMAN RELIGION AND MYTH

The traditional religion of the Greeks and Romans was polytheistic in structure, and the Greeks and Romans loved to tell stories about all their gods and goddesses: what they looked like, how they behaved, whom among the mortals and other deities they loved or hated. Although the religious practices and beliefs of the Greek and Roman worlds eventually disappeared, the stories of the gods and heroes contained in classical literature became one of the most important foundation stones of European cultural traditions. The themes of Greek and Roman myth have been utilized over and over again in literature, art, and music, while the names and exploits of the various gods, fabulous creatures, and mortal heroes and heroines still live on in our language.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
religio, religionis	religion
< ligo-ligare-ligatum ¹	tie, bind
theos (θεός)	god
deus, dei	god
divus, divi	god, divine
mythos (μῦθος)	story
fabula, fabulae	story
heros (ἥρωας)	hero. The Greek word denotes a semi-divine being, whose exploits brought him everlasting fame.

THE GREEK AND ROMAN GODS

Just as there are similarities between the Greek and Latin languages because both belong to the Indo-European family and thus have a common ancestry, there are also similarities between the pantheons of their gods for the very same reason. In addition, the Romans adapted and retold many Greek myths for their own use, so that often a hero will have both a Greek and Latin name, e.g., Odysseus (Greek) was called Ulysses by the Romans. Because Roman culture had a more direct influence on European tradition than did Greek, the names of the Roman deities are perhaps more familiar to us.

1. The etymology of *religio* is unclear, although most scholars believe it is derived from the verb *ligo-ligare*, perhaps from a sense of viewing religion as a way of binding the community together.

The Greek Gods and Their Roman Counterparts

<i>Greek God</i>	<i>Roman God</i>	<i>Function</i>
Zeus	Jupiter (Jove)	ruler of gods and mortals
Hera	Juno	wife and consort of Zeus (Jove); patron of marriage and the family
Poseidon	Neptune	ruler of the sea
Demeter	Ceres	goddess of grain and fertility
Athene	Minerva	goddess of wisdom; patron of arts and crafts; protector of heroes
Artemis	Diana	goddess of the hunt; protector of wild animals; guardian of children
Ares	Mars	god of war and destruction
Aphrodite	Venus	goddess of sexual passion and fertility
Hades, Plutus	Saturnus, Pluto	god of the underworld
Hermes	Mercury	messenger of the gods
Hephaestus	Vulcan	blacksmith and fire god
Apollo ²		god of light and inspiration; patron of the arts
Titans		race of giants who ruled the world before Zeus
Dionysus (Bacchus)		god of wine and flowing fertility, who inspired madness in his followers
Pan		god of shepherds and flocks, often associated with Dionysus
Nemesis		goddess of retribution

It's Been Decided

The limits on human mortality and the constraints placed on the power of free will are embodied in the figures of the Fates. They were envisioned by some ancient writers as three sisters who spun, measured, and cut the thread that is our lifespan.

Clotho (the Spinner) Lachesis (the Measurer) Atropos (the Cutter)

2. The Romans called Apollo, the Titans, Atlas, Prometheus, Dionysus, Pan, the Muses, and Nemesis by their Greek names.

THE CALENDAR

The English names of the months of the year that we use today are derived from their Latin names, although the Roman calendar was structured differently from ours.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
dies, diei	day
hemera (ἡμέρα)	day
mensis, mensis	month
annus, anni	year

The Months

<i>Month</i>	<i>Named For:</i>
January	Janus, the two-faced god of doorways, gates, and beginnings
February	Februa, a Roman feast of purification held during that month
March	Mars
April	< aperio-aperire, because this is the time when the earth begins to bloom
May	Maia, a goddess of fertility
June	Juno
July	Julius Caesar
August	Augustus Caesar
September, October	These months, of course, derive from Roman numbers.
November, December	How many months, then, did the Roman year originally have?

What Day Is Today? . . .

The *Calends* was the first day of the Roman month. Since monthly interest on loans was calculated by the *Calends*, an account book was called a *calendarium*. The only other days of the month noted by the Romans were the *Nones* (the fifth of the month, except in March, May, July, and October, when it fell on the seventh), and the *Ides* (the thirteenth, except in March, May, July, and October, when it fell on the fifteenth). It was not until quite late that the Romans adopted the practice of naming days in a repetitive cycle.

The English names of most of the days of the week are derived from the gods of Germanic myth.

OTHER TIMES . . .

<i>Latin or Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
hora, horae	hour
ante meridiem	before the middle of the day
post meridiem	after the middle of the day
cras	tomorrow
eon (αἰών)	an age; a long period of time
aevum, aevi	an age; a period of time

OTHER PLACES . . .

Greek myth describes an often fabulous world whose landscape has become part of our vocabulary:

Mount Olympus: residence of many of the Greek gods, who were thus referred to as the Olympians.

Styx: the main river in the underworld, and also its boundary line. The ancient Greeks believed that in order to enter the realm of Hades, one had to be ferried across the Styx by the boatman Charon, at the cost of one obol; thus, the dead were buried with a coin in their mouths. The adjective *stygian* is used to describe a place that is dark and gloomy.

Lethe: river in the underworld whose waters caused the dead to forget their past lives. The noun *lethargy* is the state of mental apathy and physical drowsiness.

Elysium or *Elysian Fields*: the dwelling place of those few fortunate mortals who had been granted eternal conscious life and happiness by the gods.

Augean Stables: the stables of King Augeas were so filthy that the Greek hero Heracles, as one of his twelve labors, had to divert two rivers in order to cleanse them in a single day.

Labyrinth: a maze built on Crete for King Minos by the famed Greek architect Daedalus in order to imprison the Minotaur, a man-eating creature that was half-bull and half-human.



Temple of Concord, Agrigento, Sicily. Fifth century BCE

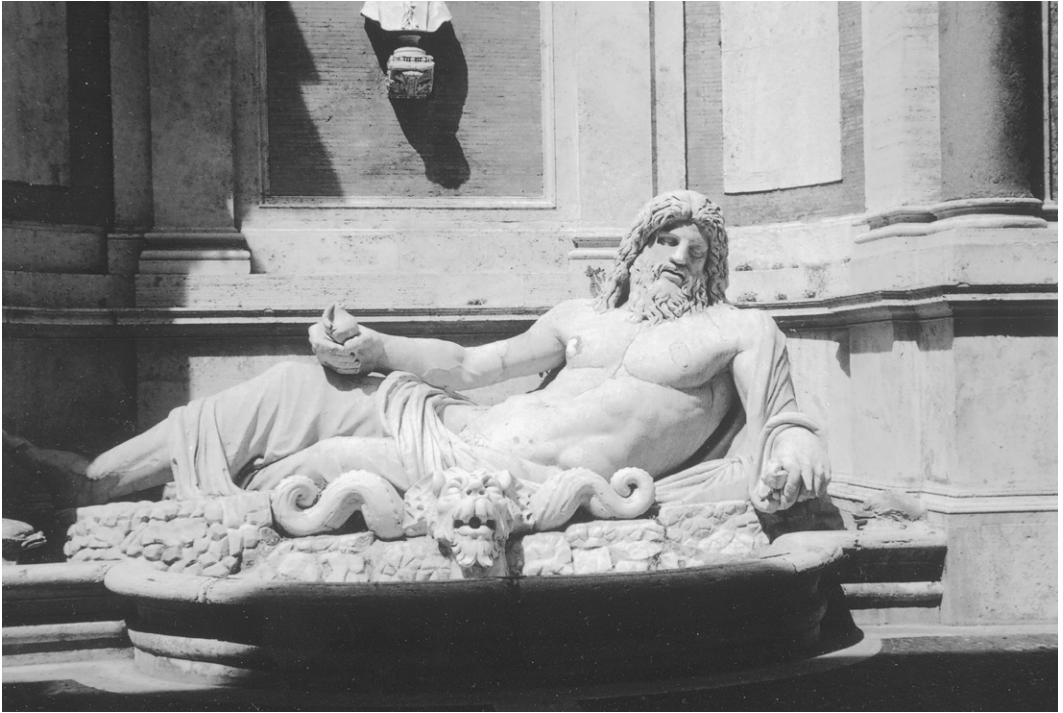
The human imagination is a powerful force, and many of the monsters of classical myth continue to haunt us:

Cerberus: three-headed dog that guarded the entrance to the Underworld. He was friendly to those who entered the house of Hades, but ate those who tried to leave. His name can be applied to any fierce guardian or watchman.

Chimera: a fire-breathing monster that had the head of a lion, the torso of a goat, and the tail of a snake. The adjective *chimerical* describes something that is wildly fanciful or unrealistic.

Gryphon or *Griffin*: a mythical creature with the head and wings of an eagle and body of a lion.

Harpies: bird-like women who tormented a number of individuals in Greek myth by snatching away their food as they tried to eat.



Roman river god (Museo Capitolino, Rome)

Medusa: one of three monstrous Gorgons, she had hair of snakes, and her glance turned men into stone. She was slain by the Greek hero Perseus.

Phoenix: a fabulous bird of great beauty, said to live for 500 years, after which it would immolate itself on a pyre, and then rise up, once again, from the ashes.

Sirens: bird-like women who lured sailors to their deaths by singing sweet and entrancing melodies while sitting on the treacherous rocks that rose up from the sea.

Sphinx: a winged female monster who would eat young men who could not answer her riddle, “What walks on four legs in the morning, two legs in the afternoon, and three legs in the evening?” She committed suicide when Oedipus gave the correct answer: man. The noun may be used to describe anyone who gives responses that are difficult to interpret.

Other myths have become part of our common cultural vocabulary, for allusions are still made to the stories of:

The Amazons. The Amazons were said to be a race of warrior women who lived without men and who excelled in those activities, such as hunting and fighting, normally considered to belong to the male sphere. The word *amazon* is now used to describe a tall and physically powerful woman.

Atlas. Atlas was a Titan who was condemned by the victorious Zeus to hold the sky on his shoulders. He gives his name to any bound collection of maps or charts.

The Golden Fleece. The Greek hero Jason was sent on a meant-to-be fatal quest to retrieve the golden fleece of a ram. The fleece was guarded by a fire-breathing dragon that never slept; but Jason, with the help of the witch Medea, was able to steal the skin and escape.

King Midas and the Golden Touch. Because he had done a kindness to the god Dionysus, Midas was granted any wish he might desire. Requesting that everything he touch turn to gold, he was at first delighted with his good fortune, but soon begged the god to take back his gift. He had turned his daughter into gold, and he was starving to death as well. Although the gift of the golden touch proved to be almost disastrous for Midas, we now use the term in a positive way.

The Labors of Hercules. Hercules (or as the Greeks called him, Heracles) was the greatest of all the ancient mythological heroes. In order to gain immortal fame, he had to perform twelve death-defying labors, including a journey to the Underworld.

Pandora's Box. Pandora, the first woman, who was created by the gods as revenge for Prometheus's theft of fire, was given a box containing all the evils of the world. Instructed not to open it, she disobeyed and released every kind of suffering into the world. Only Blind Hope remained inside. The phrase is used today to mean a source of unforeseen trouble or problems.

Procrustes. Procrustes was said to have entertained his guests by inviting them to spend the night. If they did not fit exactly into the bed he offered, he would stretch them on a rack or lop off their heads to ensure a perfect night's sleep. The adjective *procrustean* is used to describe arbitrary and violent means of insuring conformity.

Prometheus. A Titan, Prometheus stole fire from the gods because he pitied mankind. In punishment, Zeus had him bound to a rock, where each day an eagle would tear at his liver. Some say that he was freed eventually by the Greek hero, Heracles. The adjective *Promethean* means boldly original and creative.

Proteus. Proteus was a god of the sea who, like the water, could change himself into whatever form he wished. The adjective *protean* means extremely variable or changeable.

Sisyphus. As punishment for some unspecified crime, Sisyphus was condemned by the gods to forever push a boulder to the top of a hill in the Underworld, only to watch it roll back down again. His name has become synonymous with futility.

Tantalus. Tantalus, who either betrayed the secrets of the gods or attempted to trick them into eating human flesh, was punished in the Underworld. He was forced to stand in a pool up to his chin; but when he bent down to quench his overwhelming thirst, the water evaporated. Above his head hung bunches of fruit; but when



Procession in honor of the god Dionysus (British Museum)

he reached up to pick them, they were beyond his grasp. The adjective *tantalizing* describes a tormenting desire for something that is unobtainable.

TROY

Perhaps the best known and most enduring of all the Greek myths is the cycle of stories that have to do with the Trojan War, a ten-year struggle waged between the city of Troy and the Greek forces over the beautiful Helen. Writers and artists through the ages have continued to draw upon the characters and events that the Greek poet Homer first described in the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* more than 2,700 years ago. The names that figured prominently in the story of Troy are still part of our imaginative vocabulary.

Apple of Discord. Eris, the goddess of Strife, angered at not being invited to the wedding of the mortal Peleus and the sea goddess Thetis, threw a golden apple inscribed with the words, “to the fairest,” among the divine guests. Athene, Hera, and Aphrodite all laid claim and appealed to Zeus to choose among them.

The Judgment of Paris. Zeus, wisely deciding not to get involved, chose Paris, a young Trojan prince, to judge the beauty contest among the goddesses. Each offered him a bribe, but Paris selected Aphrodite because she promised him Helen.

Helen. Helen may have been Paris’s prize, but unfortunately, she was married to Menelaus, a Greek king. It was the kidnapping of Helen, who had a face “that launched a thousand ships,” that led to the outbreak of the war.

Achilles. The son of Peleus and Thetis, Achilles was the greatest of the Greek heroes to fight at Troy. According to one tradition, his mother dipped him in the river Styx in order to make his body invulnerable. Unfortunately, she was holding him by his heel, which was then unprotected against a fatal wound. The term *Achilles heel* is used to describe a point of emotional or physical vulnerability.

Myrmidons. The Myrmidons were the loyal group of Achilles’s followers who accompanied him to Troy. The name is now applied to anyone who blindly follows the commands of his leader.

Hector. In the *Iliad*, Hector is the gallant leader of the Trojan forces; but later traditions depicted him as a domineering bully. Thus, we have the verb *hector*, which means to act or speak in an overbearing way.

Cassandra. The daughter of the king of Troy, Cassandra had been given the gift of prophecy by Apollo, who had hoped to win her love. When she spurned him, the god caused her not to be believed. She foresaw the destruction of the city, but her warnings were ignored. Her name is now applied to anyone who predicts gloom and disaster.

Trojan Horse. After ten years of fighting, the Greeks still had not taken Troy, for the city had strong and well-defended walls. It was only through the trick of the wooden horse that the Greeks were able to gain entry into the city and then destroy it. Although the Trojan seer Laocoon had warned them with the words, “Whatever it is, I fear the Greeks, even those bearing gifts,” the Trojans dragged the huge horse, which the Greeks had built with the help of Athene, inside the city gates, unaware that it was filled with Greek soldiers. While the Trojans slept, the Greeks climbed out and overwhelmed the city. The phrase *Trojan Horse* is now applied to anyone or anything that seeks to destroy from within.

Stentor. Stentor was the herald of the Greek army and had a voice as loud as those of fifty men. The adjective *stentorian* is now applied to a person having a loud and powerful voice.

Odysseus. Odysseus was a brave and clever fighter at Troy, but his confrontation with danger really began on his journey back to his native Ithaca, a trip that took him nine years. Despite his extraordinary adventures, recorded in the *Odyssey*, all that Odysseus longed for was to return home.

Penelope. While Odysseus wandered, Penelope, his faithful wife, kept off the advances of many suitors who wished not only to marry her, but also to gain Odysseus’s kingdom. By a variety of clever stratagems, she fended them off until Odysseus’s return. *Penelope* became the model of the faithful wife.

Mentor. Mentor, a friend of Odysseus, gave helpful advice and counsel to Odysseus’s son, Telemachus, while Odysseus was absent. His name now means a wise counselor or teacher.

The story of the Trojan War and the aftermath of its destruction were retold by the Roman poet Vergil in his epic, the *Aeneid*. The Romans traditionally claimed to be the descendants of those few brave Trojan warriors, led by the hero Aeneas, who made their way out of the burning city to find a new home in Italy. This work, modeled on both the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*, contains many notable lines of Latin verse, among the most famous of which are:

Quidquid id est, timeo Danaos et dona ferentis

“Whatever it is, I fear the Greeks, even those bearing gifts.”

Varium et mutabile semper femina.

“A woman is a fickle and changeable thing.”

ANCIENT PEOPLES AND PLACES

Personalities from Greek and Roman history, as well as real places in the ancient world, have also found their way into English vocabulary.

Arcadia. Arcadia, a region in southwestern Greece, was viewed by ancient poets as a place of bucolic simplicity. Later writers continued to celebrate that tradition, and the adjective arcadian is now used to describe an idealized rural existence.

Rich as Croesus. Croesus, a sixth-century BCE king of Lydia, was said to have been so rich that his name has come to mean a person of untold wealth.



Odysseus offering wine to the Cyclops
Polyphemus (Vatican Museum)

Draconian. Draco, a seventh-century BCE Athenian lawgiver, produced a legal code so harsh in its penalties that his laws were said to have been written in blood, not ink. Any unusually severe measure may be described as *draconian*.

Laconic. The ancient city-state of Sparta was located in the region of Greece called Laconia. Since the Spartans were known for the brevity of their speech, the adjective *laconic* may be used to describe an individual who is concise in his remarks.

Mausoleum. The widow of the fourth-century BCE King Mausolus built a tomb for her husband at Halicarnassus that was so spectacularly decorated with sculpture that it became synonymous with an elaborate monument to the dead.

Meander. The Maeander River, in Asia Minor, was noted for its twisted and winding path into the Aegean Sea. The verb *meander* now describes action that is aimless or wandering.

Pyrrhic victory. In the third century BCE, Pyrrhus, the king of Epirus, fought and won many battles against the Romans, but at such great cost that he is reported to have said, "One more victory like this and I am undone." A pyrrhic victory, then, is one that is gained at too great a cost.

Solecism. The inhabitants of ancient Soloi were so famous for their terrible Greek grammar that they gave their name to the incorrect usage of language or manners.

Solon. Solon, an Athenian leader of the early sixth century BCE, was noted for his keen sense of justice. His social and political reforms laid the groundwork for the Athenian democracy, and his name now may be used to describe a wise statesman or lawmaker.

Spartan. The inhabitants of Sparta prided themselves on their rigorous, disciplined, and simple way of life. To live in this way may be described as *spartan*.

Sybaritic. The inhabitants of the ancient Greek city of Sybaris, on the other hand, were noted for their luxurious and excessive way of life. Although the city was destroyed in the sixth century BCE, it survives in the adjective *sybaritic*, which describes the enjoyment of sensuous and indulgent pleasures.

PHILOSOPHY

Philosophy is literally the “love of wisdom,” but for the Greeks philosophy had as its original impetus the search for the causes of things, both physical and ethical. The earliest Greek philosophers, who were called the physicists, investigated the nature and constituent parts of the physical cosmos, and the relationship between the world of nature and the world of human activity. The focus of later Greek and Roman philosophy, however, was the realm of human action, behavior, and spiritual goals: how are we to act best in this world? What is the best form of polity? Is it possible to achieve happiness? Is the human soul immortal? The various schools of ancient philosophy still find expression today, not only in the questions they raised and the ideals they pursued, but in their language and forms of argumentation as well.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
sophia (σοφία)	wisdom
ethos (ἦθος)	custom, usage; character, disposition
mos, moris	custom, usage; manner
ingenium, ingenii	natural quality; inborn characteristic
cf. genus, generis	

Ancient Greek Schools of Philosophy

Platonism: the doctrine of the fourth-century BCE Greek philosopher Plato and his successors. Because Plato taught the highest form of love was that of the soul for the Good, the term *platonic* is most often used now to refer to his elevation above all else of spiritual love untouched by physical desire.

Stoicism: the doctrines of the school of philosophy founded by the fourth century BCE by Zeno; the word *stoic* is now used to refer to one of the central teachings of the school, that one should submit uncomplainingly to Fate and “go with the flow.” The adjective is derived from *stoa* (στοά), a detached portico in Athens where Zeno supposedly taught his followers.

Epicureanism: the teachings of the fourth-century BCE Greek philosopher Epicurus, who preached that the highest good is pleasure, which his followers interpreted as freedom from pain or disturbance, but which his critics condemned as the pursuit of unbridled freedom and self-indulgence. The adjective is now used to refer to the enjoyment of sensual pleasures, especially in eating and drinking.

Hedonism: the doctrine that teaches that pleasure or happiness is the highest good. The noun is derived from *hedone* (ἡδονή), and now connotes an excessive devotion to physical pleasure.

Cynicism: the doctrine of a school of Greek philosophy that preached independence of action and complete freedom from social conventions. The etymology of the name is a matter of debate; the root of the word is *kyon*, *kynos* (κύων = dog), and it has been suggested that the name derived from the fact that the Cynics were noted for their rude behavior and took special pleasures in violating the rules of polite society. Perhaps the most famous of the Cynics was the fourth-century BCE Diogenes, who went about with a lantern saying that he was looking for an honest man. Today the word is used to describe someone who questions social values and distrusts human sincerity and moral purpose.

Skepticism: The skeptic philosophers taught that since sense perceptions were deceptive, there was no possibility of absolute knowledge about anything, and therefore one was to withhold judgment about everything. Pyrrhon, the fourth-century BCE founder of the school, taught that nobody has yet found the truth, so why distress ourselves? Be genuinely indifferent to all that happens, for appearances are enough to live by.

Forms of Philosophical and Logical Argumentation

Latin Phrase	Literal Meaning	Current Meaning
<i>a fortiori</i>	from the stronger	for a still stronger reason
<i>a posteriori</i>	from the one after	from effect to cause; based on observation or experience
<i>a priori</i>	from the one before	from cause to effect; validity independent of experience
<i>ad hoc</i>	to this thing	for a special purpose
<i>ad hominem</i>	against the man	appealing to prejudice or emotion
<i>ad rem</i>	to the matter	relevant or pertinent

THE LANGUAGE OF CHRISTIANITY

Because Greek was the primary language of many of the earliest Christian writers, much of the sacred language of Christianity is Greek in origin.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
biblos (βιβλος)	book
dogma (δόγμα)	decree; opinion; teaching
doxa (δόξα)	belief; opinion
cf. doceo-docēre-doctum = show, teach	
apostello (ἀποστέλλω)	send out
martyrs, martyros (μάρτυρες)	witness
oecumene (οἰκουμένη)	inhabited world
angelos (ἄγγελος)	messenger
ecclesia (ἐκκλησία)	assembly
hieros (ιερός)	sacred
hagios (ἅγιος)	sacred, holy; saint
credo-credere-creditum	believe, trust
sacrum, sacri	sacred, holy
templum, templi	temple

Sacred Space

The root of the English word *church* is almost unrecognizable in its Anglicized form. It is derived from *cyriakon* (κυριακόν = belonging to the Lord); the Greek-based word was introduced into Old English at the time of the conversion of the Anglo-Saxons to Christianity in 597 CE.



17: EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. Which mythological figures or places appear in this paragraph, and what does each of them represent?

The plutocrats looked down from the Olympian heights of the corporate boardroom as they watched the plebeians on the stock exchange floor panic at the mercurial behavior of the prices of cereal futures. Despite their saturnine expressions, the titans of industry actually felt jovial at this turn of events.

	<i>English Word</i>	<i>Mythological Figure or Place</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
1.	_____	_____	_____
2.	_____	_____	_____
3.	_____	_____	_____
4.	_____	_____	_____
5.	_____	_____	_____
6.	_____	_____	_____
7.	_____	_____	_____
8.	_____	_____	_____

B. Answer each question or fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. If you are unsure of the meaning, check your unabridged dictionary.

9. What do *Janus* and a *janitor* have in common? _____.

10. Why did the bodybuilder who called himself Charles *Atlas* choose that stage name?

11. A *martial* spirit is useful in times of_____.
12. I thought I had gotten away with the crime, but the policeman proved to be my _____.
13. The ancient Romans believed that the eruptions of fire and lava from Mt. Vesuvius were caused by the god _____.
14. When the emperor Augustus was *deified*, the Roman senate decreed that he had been _____ into a_____.
15. "It's been eons since I saw you," he cried. He was exaggerating, but it really had been_____.
16. If you put off for tomorrow what you should do today, you are _____.
17. *Ephemeral* ideas last _____.
18. What do the abbreviations A.M. and P.M. represent?

19. I was terrified, because the _____ darkness made it impossible to know where I was.
20. The *labyrinthine* structure of the building confused me; I felt as if I were lost in _____.
21. What is the chief symptom of *lethargy*? _____
22. My mother said my room was so dirty that it reminded her of the_____; and so I began the *Sisyphean* task of cleaning it, even though I knew my efforts would be_____.
23. My secretary sits outside my office like a _____, always guarding and protecting me from unwanted visitors.
24. I was tormented by the _____ aroma coming from the bakery, but, unfortunately, I was on a diet. Like a_____, the chocolate cake called out to me, "Eat me"; but I resisted.
25. After the movie flopped, everyone said the actor's career had gone up in flames; but the following year, like the_____, he rose from the ashes.
26. Many politicians have a _____ability to change positions on almost any issue.
27. He warned her not to ask those questions, for it would only open up a _____ that would cause her great unhappiness.
28. Everywhere he went he was surrounded by his_____, who would do anything he wanted.

29. His *hectoring* tones revealed his _____ personality.
30. A person who gives wise advice and counsel may be called a _____.
31. To speak in *stentorian* tones is to talk _____.
32. A faithful wife may be described as resembling _____.
33. His constant predictions of impending disaster turned him into a _____, whom no one believed.
34. His _____ around the world to find happiness led him on a long and wandering journey.
35. His luxurious lifestyle and self-indulgent behavior were indicative of his _____ temperament; his brother, however, lived in _____ surroundings, getting by with little beyond the necessities.
36. Calvin Coolidge, the thirtieth U.S. president (1923–1928), was nicknamed “Silent Cal” because he was a man of few words. The adjective we might use to describe him is _____.
37. The painting depicted an _____ landscape of unspoiled beauty and simplicity.
38. *I should of went* is an example of a _____.
39. When the critic described the millionaire’s new home as a *mausoleum*, he meant that it resembled a _____.
40. A battle that is won at too great a cost is called a _____.
41. Cutting off a thief’s hand for stealing a loaf of bread is a _____ punishment.
42. When sitting in the dentist’s chair, what is the best philosophical attitude to adopt? _____
43. A *hedonist* lives only for _____.
44. She told him, “let’s just be friends;” but since he wanted to get married, he was not at all interested in a _____ relationship with her.
45. He indulged his _____ tastes by ordering the best food and wine on the menu.
46. Her _____ attitude made it impossible for her to believe that anyone sincerely acted on moral principle.
47. We formed an _____ committee to deal only with that particular problem.

48. *Contemplation* should take place in a _____. What is the current English usage of this word? _____
49. The account of his life read like a *hagiography*, since it concealed all his faults and portrayed him as a _____.
50. The *Apostles* were _____ to preach the Christian Gospel.
51. The ancient Egyptian system of writing is called *hieroglyphs* because it was once believed that they were _____ carvings.
52. A *dogmatic* individual wants to impose his own _____ on others.
53. *Angels* are the _____ of God.
54. The original meaning of *hierarchy* concerned the _____. What is its current English usage? _____
55. According to its root, *moral* behavior should be determined by _____.
56. As his thoughts *meandered*, his attention _____ from the professor's lecture.

LINGUA LATINA
ETIAM VIVIT!
(The Latin Language Still Lives!)



Bathing beauty. Fourth century CE
(Piazza Armerina, Sicily)

*Moth: They have been at a great feast of languages and stolen the scraps.
Costard: O, they have lived long on the almsbasket of words! I marvel thy master
hath not eaten thee for a word; for thou art not so long by the head as
Honorificabilitudinitatibus; thou art easier swallowed than a flapdragon.*

WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE, *Love's Labour's Lost*, V.i

We have already seen how vibrant and powerful a force Latin has been in the shaping of English vocabulary; and although it is no longer a spoken language, there are many phrases and expressions used in English that still appear in their Latin form.

Latin Proverbs

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
cum grano salis	with a grain of salt
de gustibus non est disputandum	About tastes, it ought not to be argued.
de mortuis nil nisi bonum	About the dead, (say) nothing but good.
deo volente	God willing!
errare humanum est	To err is human.
nihil sub sole novum	There's nothing new under the sun.
nos morituri te salutamus	We who are about to die salute you.
vita brevis, ars longa	Life is short; art is long.

Measurements of Time

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ab ovo	from the egg (from the beginning)
in principio	in the beginning
ante bellum	before the war
post bellum	after the war
anno domini	in the year of (our) Lord
status quo	the state in which
pro tempore	for the time (being)
terminus ante quem	end before which
terminus post quem	end after which
ad infinitum	to infinity
per diem	by the day
carpe diem	Seize the day! (Enjoy the moment.)
tempus fugit	Time flies.
finis	the end

Measures and Relationships

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
in toto	in the whole (completely)
per se	by itself (intrinsically)
quid pro quo	something for something (one thing in return for another)
ne plus ultra	not more beyond (the highest point)
ex parte	out of the part (on one side only)
passim	here and there
per capita	by heads (by individuals)
ex post facto	from a thing done after (subsequently)
ad nauseam	to the point of disgust

Speech and Language

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ipse dixit	he himself said
lapsus linguae	slip of the tongue
lingua franca	the Frankish tongue (the commonly spoken language)
mirabile dictu	wonderful to tell
non sequitur	it does not follow (illogical conclusion)
verbatim	word for word
viva voce	with living voice (orally)
vox populi	voice of the people

Drama and Theater

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
dramatis personae	the masks (characters) of the drama
deus ex machina	the god out of the machine (an improbable solution)
in medias res	in the middle of things
exit	he/she goes out
exeunt	they go out
exeunt omnes	they all go out

People, Places, and Things

<i>Latin</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
alma mater	nourishing mother
alter ego	another I
alumna	foster daughter
alumnus	foster son
desideratum	that which was desired
in absentia	in the absence of
in situ	in place
inter alia	among other things
inter alios	among other people
magnum opus	great work
mea culpa	my fault
modus operandi	way of operating
modus vivendi	way of living
persona non grata	a person not pleasing (a person not welcome)
quid nunc	what now? (a gossip)
rara avis	rare bird (a rare person; one of a kind)
sine qua non	without which not (something essential)
sub rosa	under the table (confidentially; secretly)
sui generis	of its own kind (unique)
summum bonum	highest good
tabula rasa	blank slate
terra firma	solid earth
terra incognita	unknown land
vade mecum	walk with me (guidebook; manual)

Latin Abbreviations and Words Used in Scholarly Research and Writing

<i>Latin Abbreviation or Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
c. or ca. (circa)	around
cf. (confer)	compare
ed. cit. (editio citata)	the edition cited
e.g. (exempli gratia)	for (the sake of an) example
et al. (et alii or et alia)	and others (people or things)
etc. (et cetera)	and the rest
et seq. (et sequens or sequentia)	and following (singular or plural)
fl. (floruit)	he/she flourished
ibid. (ibidem)	in the same place
i.e. (id est)	that is
loc. cit. (loco citato)	in the place cited
n.b. or N.B. (nota bene)	note well
op. cit. (opere citato)	in the work cited
q.e.d. (quod erat demonstrandum)	that which was to be proved or shown
seriatim	in a series
sic	thus
stet	let it stand
viz. (videlicet)	namely



18: EXERCISES

NAME _____

A. Find the Latin phrase that best fills out the meaning of the sentence.

1. He lies all the time, so I would take anything he says _____.
2. Everyone makes mistakes; after all, _____.
3. I love sushi, but my husband hates raw fish. I always tell him, _____.
4. He was a terrible person, but now that he has died, remember: _____.
5. Instead of having a permanent chairperson, someone was chosen at each session to run the meeting as chairperson _____.
6. The agreement was made _____, and the details were confidential.
7. He said that I would get paid by the day, but I did not take the job since the _____ rate was too low.
8. Since life is short, enjoy yourself! _____, as the Romans used to say.
9. The years flew by, and only now do I realize _____.
10. I gave you this; you gave me that. It was a _____ agreement.
11. He repeated his argument without stopping and until I was disgusted. What are the phrases that can be used to describe his behavior and my response?

12. I didn't mean to say that; it was a _____.
13. He called himself the _____, but the only voice you could hear was his.
14. I can't begin to say how remarkable it was, but _____, I passed the exam.
15. Nothing he said made any sense; I couldn't understand his arguments since they were filled with _____.
16. The situation was awful; the only thing that could save us was a _____.

17. Since the stage directions read *exeunt omnes*, _____ the actors _____.
18. “*Mea culpa*,” he said; “it really is _____.”
19. Some believe an infant’s mind is a _____, on which anything can be written.
20. I behaved so badly that I knew that he would never invite me again. I had become _____.
21. There is no one like him. He is truly a _____.
22. I wandered around for hours after I got off at the wrong subway stop. I didn’t recognize anyone or anything; I was in _____.
23. Since the defendant was not to be located, he was tried _____.
24. My friend is just like me in every way; he is my _____.
25. I hate flying, and so I was glad to put my feet on _____.
26. I don’t know the exact date it happened, but it was _____ 1950.
27. Although the police did not know the identity of the bank robber, they had figured out his _____, since the criminal always acted in the same way.
28. I photographed the object _____ so that its exact location could be recorded.
29. I will always look back with fondness on my college years, since my _____ nourished me in many ways.
30. The action of the story began _____; only later did the reader find out what had happened before.
31. His way of life was not to my liking, but I realized that each of us finds our own _____.
32. The newspaper carried a _____ report of his speech, publishing every word.
33. After the Civil War, the South looked back on its _____ history.
34. I always write the words of the ancient Roman gladiators on the top of my exam paper: _____.

B. Fill in the blank with an abbreviated Latin phrase:

35. There are many activities I love in the summer, _____, swimming, hiking, and sleeping in the hammock.
36. It is impossible to determine the exact date of the beginning of the Industrial Revolution, so most historians simply write, “_____ 1760.”
37. He never finished telling a story. He would begin, and then say, “_____.”
38. Frank, Mary, Susan, Joe, Harry _____ all came to the party.

Greek Vocabulary

If the stem of a noun is used to form learned borrowings in English, the genitive case is given.

A (Α)

a- (ἀ-) = lack of

acron (ἄκρον) = topmost

adelphe (ἀδελφή) = sister

adelphos (ἀδελφός) = brother

aden (ἀδὴν) = gland

aegis (ἀιγίς) = shield

aeon (αἰών) = age; long period of time

aer (ἀήρ) = air

hagion (ἅγιον) = sacred, holy

ago (ἄγω) = do

agon (ἄγών) = contest; struggle

agora (ἀγορά) = marketplace

ether (αἰθήρ) = heaven, sky

hema, hematos (αἷμα) = blood

heresis (ἄρεσις) = choice

esthesis (αἰσθησις) = perception

etia (αἰτία) = cause, reason

ailuros (αἰλυρος) = cat

algos (ἄλγος) = pain

amphi (ἄμφι) = around; on both sides

ancyra (ἄγκυρα) = anchor

ana (ἀνά) = up; backward; again

anemos (ἄνεμος) = wind

aner, andros (ἀνὴρ) = man

angelos (ἄγγελος) = messenger

anthos (ἄνθος) = flower

anthropos (ἄνθρωπος) = man

anti (ἄντι) = against

apo (ἀπό) = from, away from

apologia (ἀπολογία) = defense

apostello (ἀποστέλλω) = send out

apostrophe (ἀποστροφή) = turning back

arachne (ἀράχνη) = spider

arche (ἀρχή) = rule; beginning

archeon (ἀρχαῖον) = old

archon (ἄρχων) = ruler, chief

arctos (ἄρκτος) = bear

argyros (ἄργυρος) = silver

aristos (ἄριστος) = best

arithmos (ἀριθμός) = number

harmonia (ἁρμονία) = joining together;

harmony

arteria (ἀρτηρία) = windpipe

aster (ἄστήρ) = star

astron (ἄστρον) = star

athlos (ἄθλος) = contest

atmos (ἄτμος) = vapor

atomos (ἄτομος) = uncut
 auto (αὐτό) = self
 axioma (ἀξίωμα) = theorem

B (Β)

bacterion (βακτήριον) = rod, staff
 baino (βαίνω) = go
 barbaros (βάρβαρος) = foreign
 baron (βάρων) = heavy
 basileus (βασιλεύς) = king
 biblion (βιβλίον) = book
 biblos (βίβλος) = book
 bios (βίος) = life
 blastos (βλαστός) = seed
 botane (βοτάνη) = grass, herb
 bous (βοῦς) = cow
 brachy (βραχύ) = short
 brady (βραδύ) = slow
 bronchos (βρόγχος) = windpipe
 bronte (βροντή) = thunder

Γ (Γ)

gala (γάλα) = milk
 gamete (γαμετή) = wife
 gametes (γαμετής) = husband
 gamos (γάμος) = marriage
 ganglion (γάγγλιον) = tumor
 gaster, gastros (γαστήρ) = stomach
 ge (γῆ) = earth
 genea (γενέα) = family
 genos (γένος) = race, family
 geron, gerontos (γέρον) = old man
 geusis (γεῦσις) = taste
 gigas, gigantos (γίγας) = mighty
 glossa or glotta (γλῶσσα) = tongue
 glycys (γλυκύς) = sweet
 gnosis (γνώσις) = knowledge
 gone (γονή) = produce, offspring
 gonia (γωνία) = angle

gony (γόνυ) = knee
 grammar (γράμμα) = letter
 grapho (γράφω) = write
 gymnazo (γυμνάζω) = exercise
 gyne, gynecos (γυνή) = woman

Δ (Δ)

daphne (δάφνη) = laurel tree
 deca (δέκα) = ten
 decaton (δέκατον) = tenth
 demos (δῆμος) = people
 dendron (δένδρον) = tree
 derma, dermatos (δέρμα) = skin
 despotes (δεσποτής) = master, lord
 deuteron (δεύτερον) = second
 dia (διά) = through; on account of
 diaphragma (διάφραγμα) = partition
 diatribe (διατριβή) = a way of spending
 time; criticism
 didacton (διδάκτον) = taught
 dieta (δαιτα) = way of life
 dinon (δεινόν) = terrible
 dioecesis (διοίκησις) management;
 government
 dis (δ्विς) = twice
 discos (δισκος) = plate
 dogma (δόγμα) = teaching; decree
 dracon (δράκων) = snake, dragon
 drama (δράμα) = deed, act
 dromos (δρόμος) = running
 drys, dryos (δρῦς) = oak tree
 dynamis (δύναμις) = force, power
 dyo (δύο) = two
 dys- (δυσ-) = bad, difficult

Ε (Ε)

hebdomon (ἑβδομον) = seventh
 ec, ex (εκ, εξ) = out of
 hecaton (ἑκατόν) = one hundred

embryon (ἐμβρυον) = young
 embryon (ἐμβρυον) = young
 emphasis (ἐμφασις) = impression; meaning
 empiroion (ἐμπειριον) = experienced
 emporion (ἐμπόριον) = market
 en (ἐν) = in
 enaton (ἐνατον) = ninth
 encephalos (ἐγκέφαλος) = brain
 encomion (ἐγκώμιον) = praise
 encyclion (ἐγκυκλιον) = encircling
 endon (ἐνδον) = within
 ennea (ἐννέα) = nine
 enteron (ἐντερον) = inside, gut
 entomon (ἐντομον) = notched
 epi (ἐπί) or eph' (ἐφ-) = on, upon; for; in
 addition to
 episcopos (ἐπίσκοπος) = overseer;
 guardian
 episteme (ἐπιστήμη) = knowledge
 ergon (ἔργον) = work
 eros (ἔρως) = desire
 erythron (ἐρυθρόν) = red
 ethnos (ἔθνος) = nation, people
 eu (εὖ) = well
 hen (ὅν) = one
 hepta (ἑπτά) = seven
 herpo (ἑρπω) = creep, crawl
 heteron (ἕτερον) = other
 hex (ἕξ) = six

Z (Ζ)

zoon (ζῶον) = living being
 zyme (ζύμη) = leaven

H (Η)

hedone (ἡδονή) = pleasure
 electron (ἡλεκτρον) = amber
 helios (ἥλιος) = sun
 helix (ἥλιξ) = spiral

hemera (ἡμέρα) = day
 hemi- (ἡμι-) = half
 hepar, hepatos (ἥπαρ) = liver
 ethos (ἥθος) = custom; behavior

Θ (ΘΗ)

thanatos (θάνατος) = death
 theatron (θέατρον) = place of seeing
 theoria (θεωρία) = spectacle;
 contemplation
 theos (θεός) = god
 therapia (θεραπεία) = service
 thermos (θερμός) = warm
 thesauros (θησαυρός) = treasury
 thrix, trichos (θρίξ) = hair
 thronos (θρόνος) = seat, chair
 thyreos (θυρεός) = shield

I (Ι)

iatros (ιατρός) = doctor
 ichthys (ιχθύς) = fish
 icon (εἰκών) = image, likeness
 idea (ιδέα) = form, class, kind
 idion (ἴδιον) = one's own; private
 idiotes (ιδιώτης) = private citizen
 hieron (ἱερόν) = sacred, holy
 ion (ἰόν) = going
 hippos (ἵππος) = horse
 ison (ἴσον) = equal
 histemi (ἵστημι) = make stand
 historia (ἱστορία) = inquiry
 histos (ἵστός) = web

K (Κ, C)

cacon (κακόν) = bad
 canon (κανόν) = rule; standard
 cardia (καρδιά) = heart
 cata (κατά) or cath- (καθ-) = down, away;
 against; concerning

catharsis (κάθαρσις) = cleansing;
 purification
 cephalē (κεφαλή) = head
 ceramia (κεραμεία) = pottery
 kineō (κινέω) = move
 kinesis (κίνησις) = movement
 cithara (κιθάρα) = lyre, lute
 clima (κλίμα) = zone, region
 cline (κλίνη) = bed; couch
 clōn (κλών) = twig
 colon (κόλον) = colon
 cōlon (κῶλον) = member
 coma (κῶμα) = deep sleep
 comma (κόμμα) = that which is cut off
 comoedia (κωμωδία) = comedy
 comos (κῶμος) = revel; merrymaking
 cosmos (κόσμος) = order
 cratos (κράτος) = strength; rule
 creas (κρέας) = flesh, meat
 crino (κρίνω) = separate, distinguish
 crisis (κρίσις) = decision, trial; dispute
 crypton (κρυπτόν) = hidden
 cyanon (κύανον) = blue
 cybernetes (κυβερνήτης) = pilot, governor
 cyclos (κύκλος) = circle
 cymbalon (κύμβαλον) = cymbal
 cyon, cynos ((κύων) = dog
 cystis (κυστίς) = bladder
 cytos (κύτος) = hollow, vessel

Λ (L)

leon (λέων) = lion
 lethargos (λήθαργος) = forgetful
 leptos (λεπτός) = slender
 leucon (λευκόν) = white
 limne (λίμνη) = lake
 lithos (λίθος) = stone
 logos (λόγος) = word; thought; study
 lysis (λύσις) = loosening, untying

Μ (M)

macron (μακρόν) = large
 malacon (μαλακόν) = soft
 mania (μανία) = madness
 manthano (μανθάνω) = learn
 martys, martyros (μάρτυς) = witness
 mater (μήτηρ) = mother
 mathesis (μάθησις) = learning
 mechane (μηχανή) = device, machine
 megas, megalos (μεγάζ) = very large
 melas, melanos (μέλας) = black
 melodia (μελωδία) = song
 meson (μέσον) = middle
 meta (μετά) or meth- (μεθ-) = with; after,
 beyond; change
 metabole (μεταβολή) = change
 meteoron (μετέωρον) = raised in the air
 methodos (μέθοδος) = pursuit
 methy (μέθυ) = wine
 metron (μέτρον) = measure
 miasma (μίασμα) = stain, pollution
 micron (μικρόν) = small
 mimesis (μίμησις) = representation;
 imitation
 miseo (μισέω) = hate
 mneme (μνήμη) = memory
 molybdos (μόλυβδος) = lead
 monon (μόνον) = single, only
 moron (μῶρον) = foolish
 morphe (μορφή) = shape, form
 musice (μουσική) = art of the Muses
 myelos (μυελός) = marrow
 myrias, myriados (μυριάς) = 10,000
 mys (μῦς) = muscle
 mythos (μῦθος) = story

Ν (N)

necros (νεκρός) = corpse
 neon (νέον) = new

nephros (νεφρός) = kidney

neuron (νεῦρον) = nerve

nomicon (νομικόν) = of the law

nomos (νόμος) = law; rule

nymphē (νύμφη) = maiden

Ξ (X)

xenos (ξένος) = stranger, foreigner

xeron (ξηρόν) = dry

xylon (ξύλον) = wood; material

Ο (O)

octo (ὀκτώ) = eight

hodos (ὁδός) = road

odous, odontos (ὀδούς) = tooth

odyne (ὀδύνη) = pain

ogdoon (ὀγδοον) = eighth

ecos (οἶκος) = house

ecumene (οἰκουμένη) = inhabited
world

oligoι (ὀλίγοι) = few

homeon (ὁμοῖον) = similar

homon (ὁμόν) = same

onuma (ὄνυμα) = name

ophthalmos (ὀφθαλμός) = eye

opsis (ὄψις) = sight, view

opteuo (ὀπτεύω) = look at, see

orchestra (ὀρχήστρα) = dancing stage

orexis (ὄρεξις) = appetite

organon (ὄργανον) = instrument, tool;
bodily organ

hormao (ὀρμάω) = excite, stimulate

ornis, ornithos (ὄρνις) = bird

oros, oreos (ὄρος) = mountain

orthon (ὀρθόν) = straight

osteon (ὀστέον) = bone

ostracon (ὀστρακον) = tile

ous, otos (ὄυς) = ear

Π (P)

pachy (παχύ) = thick

paean (παιάν) = song of thanksgiving to
Apollo, god of healing

paleon (παλαιόν) = old

pan, pantos (πάν) = all

pancreas (πάγκρεας) = sweetbread

papyrus (πάπυρος) = papyrus plant

para (παρά) = beside; contrary to;
irregular; beyond

parabole (παράβολή) = comparison

paradigma (παράδειγμα) = pattern

paragraphe (παράγραφη) = anything
written beside; slash mark

parenthesis (παρένθεσις) = insertion

pascho (πάσχω) = suffer, endure

pater (πατήρ) = father

pathos (πάθος) = suffering, condition

pedia (παιδεία) = education

pente (πέντε) = five

pepto (πέπτω) = soften, cook

peri (περί) = around, about, near

periodos (περίοδος) = going around

pes, pedos (παῖς) = child

petros (πέτρος) = stone

pithecos (πίθηκος) = monkey

planetes (πλανήτης) = wanderer, planet

plasticon (πλαστικόν) = molded

platy (πλατύ) = broad, wide

plege (πληγή) = blow

plethora (πληθώρα) = fullness

pleura (πλευρά) = side; rib

pneo (πνέω) = breathe

pneumon (πνευμών) = lung

poietes (ποιητής) = maker, poet

polemos (πόλεμος) = war

polis (πολίς) = city-state

poly (πολύ) = many

potamos (ποταμός) = river

pous, podos (πούς) = foot
 pragma (πράγμα) = business; matter
 praxis (πράξις) = transaction, doing
 presbys (πρέσβυς) = old
 pro (πρό) = before; in front of
 pros (πρός) = to, toward; in addition to
 proton (πρῶτον) = first
 pteron (πτερόν) = wing
 pyloros (πυλωρός) = gatekeeper
 pyr, pyros (πῦρ) = fire

P (Ρ)

rheo (ρέω) = flow
 rhetor (ρήτωρ) = speaker
 rhis, rhinos (ρίς) = nose

Σ (Σ)

sacchar (σάκχαρ) = sugar
 sarx, sarcos (σάρξ) = flesh
 sauros (σαῦρος) = lizard
 scene (σκηνή) = tent; stage backdrop
 schema (σχῆμα) = form, shape
 schole (σχολή) = leisure
 scleron (σκληρόν) = hard
 scopeo (σκοπέω) = look at
 sideros (σίδηρος) = iron
 skeletos (σκελετός) = dried up
 soma, somatos (σῶμα) = body
 sophia (σοφία) = wisdom
 sophistes (σοφιστής) = expert, teacher
 sperma (σπέρμα) = seed
 sphaera (σφαῖρα) = ball
 sphongos (σφόνγγος) = sponge
 stadion (στάδιον) = racecourse
 stereon (στερεόν) = solid, firm
 sthenos (σθένος) = strength
 stoa (στοά) = cloister, colonnade
 stoma, stomatos (στόμα) = mouth

strategos (στρατηγός) = general
 symposion (συμπόσιον) = drinking party
 syn (σύν) or sym- (συμ-) = with
 synthesis (σύνθεσις) = putting together
 systema (σύστημα) = whole; composition

T (Τ)

tachys (ταχύς) = rapid, swift
 tauros (ταῦρος) = bull
 techne (τέχνη) = skill, art
 tele (τῆλε) = at a distance
 tessara or tettara (τέσσαρα) = four
 tithemi (τίθημι) = put, place
 tomos (τομός) = cutting
 topos (τόπος) = place
 trachea (τραχεῖα) = rough
 tragoedia (τραγωδία) = tragedy (literally, goat song)
 trapeza (τράπεζα) = table
 trauma, traumatos (τραῦμα) = wound
 tris (τρεῖς) = three
 triton (τρίτον) = third
 tropos (τρόπος) = turn; way, manner
 trophe (τροφή) = nourishment
 tympanon (τύμπανον) = drum
 typos (τύπος) = mark; model, outline
 tyrannos (τύραννος) = absolute ruler

Υ (Υ, Υ)

hybris (ὕβρις) = pride, arrogance
 hydor, hydatos (ὕδωρ) = water
 hygieia (ὕγιεια) = health
 hygion (ὕγρον) = moisture
 hyle (ὕλη) = matter
 hymnos (ὕμνος) = song of praise
 hyper (ὑπέρ) or hyph- (ὑφ-) = above; excessively
 hyphen (ὕφέν) = in one

hypnos (ὑπνος) = sleep

hypo (ὑπό) or hyph- (ὑφ-) = below; deficient

hypocrites (ὑποκριτής) = actor

hystera (ὑστέρα) = uterus

Φ (PH)

phagein (φαγεῖν) = eat

phalanx (φάλαγξ) = phalanx

pharmacon (φάρμακον) = drug; poison

pharynx (φάρυγξ) = throat

pheno (φαίνω) = seem, appear; shine

pheno- (learned borrowing) = shining

phenomenon (φαινόμενον) = a thing

come to light

phero (φέρω) = bear, carry

philia (φιλία) = love

phlegma (φλέγμα) = phlegm

phleps, phlebos (φλέψ) = vein

phobos (φόβος) = fear

phone (φωνή) = sound

phos, photos (φῶς) = light

phren (φρήν) = midriff

phyllon (φύλλον) = leaf

phylon (φύλον) = race, tribe; class

physis (φύσις) = nature

X (CH)

chalcos (χαλκός) = copper

chaos (χάος) = void

character (χαρακτήρ) = mark

charisma (χάρισμα) = grace

chartes (χάρτης) = papyrus roll

chemeia (χημεία) = alloying

chilioi (χίλιοι) = one thousand

chloros (χλωρός) = green

cholae (χολαί) = gall bladder

chole (χολή) = bile

choreuo (χορεύω) = dance in a circle

christos (χριστός) = anointed

chroma, chromatos (χρῶμα) = color

chronos (χρόνος) = time

chrysos (χρυσός) = gold

Ψ (PS)

pseudon (ψεῦδον) = false

psyche (ψυχή) = soul

Ω (O)

oceanos (ὠκεανός) = ocean, the great river

believed to encircle the earth

on, ontos (ὄν) = being

Latin Vocabulary

A

ab, a = from, away from	amo-amare-amatum = love
abdomen, abdominis = stomach	amor, amoris = love
abhorreo-abhorrere = shrink back	anima, animae = breath
acer, acris = sharp	animal, animalis = living being
ad = to, toward	animus, animi = spirit, courage
adolesco-adolescere-adultum = grow up	annus, anni = year
aedes, aedis = room	ante = before
aedificium, aedificii = building	apis, apis = bee
aequum, aequi = equal	aqua, aquae = water
aer, aeris = air	arbitror-arbitrari-arbitratum = think
aestas, aestatis = summer	arbor, arboris = tree
aevum, aevi = age; period of time	architectura, architecturae = art of building
ager, agri = field	ardeo-ardere = burn
agro- = soil, crop	area, areae = area
ago-agere-actum = do, drive	arena, arenae = sandy place; arena
alacer, alacris = brisk, quick	argentum, argenti = silver
album, albi = white	ars, artis = skill, art
alias = at another time	astrum, astri = star
alibi = in another place	atrium, atrii = entry hall
alo-alere-altum = nourish	audeo-audere = dare
ambitio, ambitionis = going around	audio-audire-auditum = hear
ambo = both	augeo-augere-auctum = increase
amicus, amici = friend	augur, auguris = seer, prophet

auris, auris = ear
 aurum, auri = gold
 auspex, auspices = diviner; protector
 autumnus, autumnus = fall
 auxilium, auxilii = aid
 avarum-avari = greedy
 aveo-avēre = be well
 avis, avis = bird

B

bacillus, bacilli = little staff
 baculum, baculi = staff, walking stick
 bellum, belli = war
 bene = well
 bilis, bilis = bile
 bis = twice
 bonum, boni = good
 brevis, brevis = short

C

cado-cadere-casum = fall
 caecum, caeci = blind
 caedo-caedere-caesum = cut; kill
 caeruleus, caerulei = blue
 calculus, calculi = pebble
 calor, caloris = warmth, heat
 camera, camerae = chamber, room
 campus, campi = field
 candeo-candēre = shine
 candesco-candescere = begin to shine
 canis, canis = dog
 canto-cantare-cantatum = sing
 capio-capere-captum = take, seize
 caput, capitis = head
 caro, carnis = flesh
 castum, casti = pure
 cedo-cedere-cessum = yield, go
 cella, cellae = small room

censeo-censēre-censum = assess
 censor, censoris = censor
 centum = one hundred
 cerebrum, cerebri = brain
 charta, chartae = map
 cilium, cilia = eyelash
 circa = around (approximately)
 circum = around (distance)
 civis, civis = citizen
 civitas, civitatis = state
 clamo-clamare-clamatum = shout
 clarum, clari = clear, bright
 claudo-claudere-clausum = close
 clavus, clavi = key
 clemens, clementis = gentle, mild
 coalesco-coalescere-coalitum = grow
 together; become one
 codex, codicis = book
 cohors, cohortis = enclosure
 collegium, collegii = corporation, group
 collum, colli = neck
 colo-colere-cultum = cultivate, till
 colonia, coloniae = estate; settlement
 color, coloris = color
 communis, communis = common
 computo-computare-computatum =
 sum up, calculate
 congregior-congredi-congressum = meet
 consul, consulis = consul
 contagio, contagionis = touching
 contra = against
 conus, coni = cone
 copia, copiae = supply, abundance
 cornu, cornus = horn
 corona, coronae = crown
 corpus, corporis = body
 cors, cordis = heart
 costa, costae = rib

cras = tomorrow
 credo-credere-creditum = believe
 creo-creare-creatum = bring forth
 cresco-crescere-cretum = arise
 crimen, criminis = crime
 cubiculum, cubiculi = bedroom
 cubo-cubare-cubitum = lie down
 culpa, culpa = fault, blame
 cum = with; together
 cumulus, cumuli = pile, heap
 cupido, cupidinis = desire
 cuprum, cupri = copper
 cura, curae = care
 curro-currere-cursum = run
 custos, custodis = guard
 cutis, cutis = skin

D

de = from; concerning, about
 debeo-debēre-debitum = owe
 decem = ten
 decimus, decimi = tenth
 decus, decoris = ornament; honor
 deformis, deformis = ugly
 deleo-delēre-deletum = destroy
 delinquo-delinquere-delictum = fail
 dens, dentis = tooth
 despicio-despicere-despectum = look
 down on; despise
 deus, dei = god
 dexter, dexteri = on the right; favorable
 dico-dicere-dictum = say, speak
 dies, diei = day
 digero-digerere-digestum = carry away
 digitus, digiti = finger, toe
 dignitas, dignitatis = worth, merit
 dis- = apart
 disciplina, disciplinae = instruction

disco-discere = learn
 divido-dividere-divisum = separate
 divortium, divortii = divorce
 divus, divi = divine
 do-dare-datum = give
 doceo-docēre-doctum = teach, show
 doctrina, doctrinae = teaching
 dominor-dominari-dominatum = rule
 dominus, domini = master
 domus, domūs = house
 dormio-dormire-dormitum = sleep
 duco-ducere-ductum = lead
 duo = two
 duodeni = twelve

E

edo-edere-esum = eat
 edo-edere-editum = bring forth
 educo-educare-educatum = bring up, rear;
 educate
 effervesco-effervescere = boil up, foam
 ego, mei = I
 eques, equitis = horseman, knight
 equus, equi = horse
 erro-errare-erratum = wander
 erudio-erudire-eruditum = polish
 (sum)-esse-futurum = be, exist
 ex, e = out, out of
 examino-examinare-examinatum = weigh,
 consider; test
 experior-experiri-expertum = try, test
 exter, exteri = outside
 extra = outside of

F

fabula, fabulae = story
 facio-facere-factum = make, do
 in compounds, -ficio, -fectum

facultas, facultatis = skill
 fallo-fallere-falsum = deceive
 fama, famae = reputation, rumor
 familia, familiae = family
 fascis, fascis = stick
 fateor-fatēre-fasum = confess, admit
 felis, felis = cat
 felix, felicitas = happy
 femina, feminae = woman
 fenestra, fenestrae = window
 fermentum, fermenti = yeast
 fero-ferre-latum = carry, bear
 ferrum, ferri = iron
 ferveo-fervere = boil
 fetus, fetūs = offspring
 fibula, fibulae = clamp, pin
 fides, fidei = faith
 fiducia, fiduciae = confidence, trust
 filia, filiae = daughter
 filius, filii = son
 finio-finire-finitum = end, finish
 fiscus, fisci = basket; treasury
 flecto-flectere-flectum = bend
 flo-flare-flatum = flow
 flumen, fluminis = river
 fluo-fluere = flow
 floreo-florēre = bloom, prosper
 flos, floris = flower
 fodio-fodere-fossum = dig
 folium, folii = leaf
 for-fari-fatum = speak
 forma, formae = shape, beauty
 formica, formicae = ant
 fortis, fortis = brave
 fortuna, fortunae = fortune, chance
 forum, fori = outdoors; forum
 fossa, fossae = ditch
 frango-frangere-fractum = break
 frater, fratris = brother

fraus, fraudis = trick, deceit
 fulmen, fulminis = lightning
 fundus, fundi = depth, bottom
 fungor-fungi-functum = perform
 fungus, fungi = mushroom
 furor, furoris = madness, rage

G

gens, gentis = people, tribe
 genu, genūs = knee
 genus, generis = class, kind
 gero-gere-gestum = bear, carry; wage
 glacies, glaciei = ice
 gladius, gladii = sword
 glans, glandis = acorn
 gnosco-gnoscere-gnotum = come to know
 gradior-gradigrassum = walk, go
 gratum, grati = pleasing
 gravis, gravis = heavy
 grex, gregis = flock, herd
 gubernator, gubernatoris = pilot

H

haereo-haerere-haesum = stick, cling
 heres, heredis = heir
 hiatus, hiatūs = opening, cleft
 hibernus, hiberni = wintry
 homo, hominis = man
 hora, horae = hour
 horreo-horrere = shudder
 hortor-hortari-hortatum = urge
 hospes, hospitis = host, guest; stranger
 hostis, hostis = enemy
 hybrida = mixed breed

I

id = it
 idem = same
 ignis, ignis = fire

ileum, ilei = flank
 imago, imaginis = image, copy
 imbecillum, imbecilli = weak
 imperium, imperii = power, command
 impero-imperare-imperatum = order
 in = in, into
 in- = not
 inauguro-inaugurare-inauguratum =
 take signs from the flight of birds
 individuum, individui = not separable
 inertia, inertiae = laziness
 infamia, infamiae = dishonor, disgrace
 ingenium, ingenii = inborn characteristic
 inimicus, inimici = unfriendly
 insania, insaniae = madness
 insectum, insecti = notched, cut
 insula, insulae = island
 intellego-intellegere-intellectum =
 grasp, understand; distinguish
 inter = between
 intestinum, intestini = inward, internal
 intra = within
 iter, itineris = route; journey

J

jacio-jacere-jactum = throw, hurl
 jejunum, jejuni = arid, dry
 judex, judicis = judge
 jugulum, juguli = throat
 jungo-jungere-junctum = join
 jus, juris = law
 juvenis, juvenis = youth

L

labor-laborari-laboratum = work
 labor-labi-lapsus = slip
 lac, lactis = milk
 lacus, lacūs = lake
 lapis, lapidus = stone

lascivum, lascivi = playful, wanton
 legio, legionis = legion
 lego-legere-lectum = choose, read
 lenis, lenis = smooth, soft; mild
 levis, levis = light
 levo-levare-levatum = lift
 lex, legis = law
 liber, liberi = free
 liber, libri = book
 libero-liberare-liberatum = set free
 libertas, libertatis = freedom
 libido, libidinis = desire, longing
 ligo-ligare-ligatum = tie
 limen, liminis = threshold
 lingua, linguae = tongue
 liquidum, liquidi = melted
 liquor-liqui = flow, melt
 littera, litterae = letter; literature (pl.)
 loquor-loqui-locutum = speak
 lucrum, lucri = profit, advantage
 ludo-ludere-lusum = play; mock
 ludus, ludi = game, sport
 lumen, luminis = light
 luna, lunae = moon
 lux, lucis = light
 luxuria, luxuriae = excess
 lympa, lymphae = water; fluid

M

magister, magistri = teacher (male)
 and magistra, magistrae (female)
 magnus, magni = large
 major, majoris = larger
 malum, mali = bad
 mando-mandare-mandatum = order
 manus, manūs = hand
 mappa, mappae = cloth, napkin; map
 mare, maris = sea
 margo, marginis = edge

maritus, mariti = husband
 mater, matris = mother
 materia, materiae = substance, matter
 matrimonium, matrimonii = marriage
 matrona, matronae = married woman
 maximum, maximi = greatest, largest
 medicus, medici = doctor
 medium, medii = middle; in the open
 melior, melioris = better
 memor, memoris = mindful
 mendax, mendacis = lying
 mens, mentis = mind
 mensis, mensis = month
 mercor-mercari-mercatum = buy
 mereor-merēri-meritum = earn, deserve
 mergo-mergere-mersum = sink, dive into
 merx, mercis = goods, wares
 miles, militis = soldier
 mille = thousand
 minimum, minimi = least
 minor, minoris = smaller
 minus = less
 miror-mirari-miratum = wonder at
 mitto-mittere-missum = send
 modus, modi = measure; manner
 moles, molis = mass
 moneo-monēre-monitum = warn
 mons, montis = mountain
 monumentum, monumenti =
 monument
 mordeo-mordēre-morsum = bite
 morior-mori-mortuum = die
 mors, mortis = death
 mos, moris = custom; character (pl.)
 moveo-movēre-motum = move
 multus, multi = much (pl., many)
 mundus, mundi = world
 municipium, municipii = town
 munus, muneris = office, duty; reward

murus, muri = wall
 mus, muris = mouse
 muto-mutare-mutatum = change

N

nascor-nasci-natum = be born
 nasus, nasi = nose
 natura, naturae = nature
 nauta, nautae = sailor
 navis, navis = ship
 nebula, nebulae = cloud
 negotium, negotii = business
 nervus, nervi = nerve
 neutrum, neutri = neither
 niger, nigri = black
 nihil = nothing
 nimbus, nimbi = cloud
 nix, nivis = snow
 nomen, nominis = name
 nomino-nominare-nominatum = name
 non = not
 nonus, noni = ninth
 novem = nine
 novum, novi = new
 nox, noctis = night
 nubo-nubere-nuptum = marry
 nucleus, nuclei = kernel
 nullus, nullius = none
 numerus, numeri = number
 nuntio-nuntiare-nuntiatum = announce
 nupta, nuptae = bride
 nutrio-nutrire-nutritum = feed, nourish;
 raise
 nux, nucis = nut

O

ob = to; against
 obsolesco-obsolescere-obsoletum = wear
 out, decay

octavus, octavi = eighth
 octo = eight
 oculus, oculi = eye
 odium, odii = hatred
 omen, ominis = omen
 omnis, omnis = every, all
 ops, opis = wealth
 optimum, optimi = best
 opto-optare-optatum = hope for
 opus, operis = work
 ordo, ordinis = rank, order
 origo, originis = source, beginning
 orior-oriri-ortum = rise
 oro-orare-oratum = speak; pray
 os, oris = mouth
 os, ossis = bone
 otium, otii = leisure

P

pagus, pagi = country district
 pars, partis = part
 patella, patellae = small pan; kneecap
 pater, patris = father
 patior-pati-passum = suffer, endure
 pauci = few
 pax, pacis = peace
 pecco-peccare-peccatum = sin
 peculium, peculii = private property
 pecunia, pecuniae = money
 pejor, peioris = worse
 pello-pellere-pulsum = strike
 pendo-pendere-pensum = hang
 per = through
 percutio-percutire-percussum = strike,
 push
 periculum, periculi = danger
 persona, personae = mask
 pes, pedis = foot
 pessimum, pessimi = worst
 peto-petere-petitum = seek, strive;
 ask for
 pigmentum, pigmenti = color
 pingo-pingere-pictum = represent, paint
 pinna, pinnae = feather; wings
 piscis, piscis = fish
 pituita, pituitae = phlegm
 plagio-plagiare-plagiatum = steal
 planus = even, level
 plaudo-plaudere-plausum = strike; clap
 plebs, plebis = the common people
 plico-plicare-plicatum = fold
 plumbum, plumbi = lead
 plus, pluris = more
 pluvia, pluviae = rain
 poeta, poetae = poet
 pono-ponere-positum = put, place
 pontifex, pontificis = priest
 populus, populi = people
 porta, portae = door
 portentum, portenti = omen, sign
 porto-portare-portatum = carry
 post = after
 postulo-postulare-postulatum =
 demand, claim; request
 potens, potentis = powerful
 potentia, potentiae = power, force
 potio-potionis = drink
 prae = before
 praesto = ready, available
 premo-premere-pressum = press
 pretium, pretii = price
 primum, primi = first
 princeps, principis = chief, leader
 proficio-proficere-profectum = gain,
 be of use; make headway
 profiteor-profitēri-professum = declare
 openly; announce
 proles, prolis = children, descendants

propago-propagare-propagatum = extend,
enlarge

proprium, proprii = one's own

prurio-prurire-pruritum = itch, burn

pudeo-pudēre-puditum = feel shame

pungo-pungere-punctum = pierce, bite

puer, pueri = boy, child

pugno-pugnare-pugnatum = fight

pulchrum, pulchri = beautiful

pulmo, pulmonis = lung

pungo-pungere-punctum = pierce; sting

pupa, pupae = little girl

pupus, pupi = little boy

puto-putare-putatum = think, consider

Q

quaero-quaerere-quaesitum = seek, ask

qualis, qualis = of what sort

quantum, quanti = how much

quartum, quarti = fourth

quasi = as if

quattuor = four

quiesco-quiescere-quietum = rest

quinque = five

quintum, quinti = fifth

quot = how many?

R

radix, radicis = root

rapio-rapere-raptum = seize

in compounds = -ripere, -reptum

rarum, rari = rare

ratio, rationis = plan; reason

recipio-recipient-receptum = take back

rectum, recti = straight

rego-regere-rectum = rule

religio, religionis = religion

remedium, remedii = cure

renum, reni = kidney

reptilis, reptilis = crawling

repudium, repudii = divorce

retro = back, backward

revertor-reverti-reversum = turn back

rex, regis = king

rigeo-rigēre = grow hard

rubrum, rubri = red

rudis, rudis = rough, uncultivated

rumpo-rumpere-ruptum = break

rus, ruris = countryside

S

saccus, sacci = purse

sacrum, sacri = holy

saeculum, saeculi = generation

sal, salis = salt

salax, salacis = lustful

salus, salutis = health

sanctum, sancti = holy

sanguis, sanguinis = blood

sanum, sani = healthy

scio-scire-scitum = know

scribo-scribere-scriptum = write

sculpo-sculpere-sculptum = form, fashion

seco-secare-sectum = cut

secundum, secundi = second

sedeo-sedēre-sessum = sit

semen, seminis = seed

semi = half

senatus, senatūs = senate

senesco-senescere = grow old

senex, senis = old man

sentio-sentire-sensum = feel

septem = seven

septimum, septimi = seventh

sequor-sequi-secutum = follow

serpo-serpere-serptum = crawl

servio-servire-servitum = serve
 servo-servare-servatum = protect; keep
 servus, servi = slave
 sesqui = one and a half
 sex = six
 sextum, sexti = sixth
 signum, signi = sign, seal
 silva, silvae = forest
 simia, simiae = monkey
 sine = without
 sinister, sinistri = on the left; unfavorable
 situs, sitūs = place
 socius, socii = ally, companion
 sol, solis = sun
 solidum, solidi = firm, dense
 solus, solius = alone, only
 solvo-solvere-solutum = loosen, untie
 somnus, somni = sleep
 sono-sonare-sonatum = sound
 sopor, soporis = deep sleep
 soror, sororis = sister
 species, speciei = view, appearance
 specio-specere = look at
 specto-spectare-spectatum = observe
 spero-sperare-speratum = hope
 spiro-spirare-spiratum = breathe
 spondeo-spondēre-sponsum = promise
 stella, stellae = star
 statuo-statuerē-statutum = set up
 sto-stare-statum = stand
 stomachus, stomachi = stomach
 stringo-stringere-strictum = bind; cut off
 struo-struere-structum = build; arrange
 studeo-studēre = be eager for
 stupeo-stupēre = be stunned, be amazed
 suadeo-suadēre-suasum = advise, urge
 sub = under
 sum-esse-futurum = be; exist

summum, summi = highest
 sumo-sumere-sumptum = obtain, buy
 super = above (preposition)
 superior, superioris = higher
 supremus, supremi = highest

T

tango-tangere-tactum = touch
 taxo-taxare-taxatum = charge; rate
 tego-tegere-tectum = cover
 tempestas, tempestatis = storm
 templum, templi = temple
 tempus, temporis = time
 teneo-tenēre-tentum = hold
 tergum, tergi = back
 termino-terminare-terminatum = end
 terra, terrae = land
 terreo-terrēre = frighten
 tertius, tertii = third
 testor-testari-testatum = show; witness
 texo-texere-textum = weave
 tibia, tibiae = flute; shinbone
 timeo-timēre = be afraid
 tolero-tolerare-toleratum = bear, carry
 traho-trahere-tractum = drag
 trans = across
 tres = three
 tribunus, tribuni = tribune
 tribuo-tribuere-tributum = give, pay
 tuba, tubae = trumpet
 tueor-tueri-tuitum = watch; protect
 turba, turbae = crowd
 turpis, turpis = wicked
 tutor, tutoris = guardian, protector

U

ulterior, ulterioris = farther
 ultimus, ultimi = farthest, last

ultra = beyond

unum, unius = one

urbs, urbis = city

ursus, ursi = bear

usura, usurae = interest

utor-uti-usum = use, employ

uxor, uxoris = wife

V

vacca, vaccae = cow

vaco-vacare-vacatum = be empty

valeo-valēre = be strong

vapor, vaporis = gas, vapor

varius, varii = different

vas, vasis = vessel

veho-vehere-vectum = carry, drive

velox, velocis = fast

vena, venae = vein

venio-venire-ventum = come

ventus, venti = wind

ver, veris = spring

verbum, verbi = word

verso-versare-versatum = turn

verto-vertere-versum = turn

verum, veri = true

vestigium, vestigii = footprint, trace

vestio-vestire-vestitum = dress,
cover

vestis, vestis = clothing

vetus, veteris = old

via, viae = way, road

vicinia, viciniae = neighborhood

video-vidēre-visum = see

villa, villae = farmhouse

vinco-vincere-victum = conquer

vir, viri = man

viridis, viridis = green

virtus, virtutis = manliness; excellence

virus, viri = poison

vita, vitae = life

vivo-vivere-victum = live

voco-vocare-vocatum = call

volvo-volvere-volutum = turn

voro-vorare-voratum = eat

votum, voti = vow

vox, vocis = voice

vulgus, vulgi = crowd

vulnus, vulneris = wound

About the Author

TAMARA M. GREEN is professor of classics and chair of the Department of Classical and Oriental Studies at Hunter College of the City University of New York.

